

CODE OF ETHICS

(Revised 2019)



The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
(Set up by an Act of Parliament)
New Delhi

CODE OF ETHICS

(Revised 2019 edition, effective from 1st April, 2020)



Issued by

The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India

(Set up by an Act of Parliament)

New Delhi

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission, in writing, from the publisher.

© THE INSTITUTE OF CHARTERED ACCOUNTANTS OF INDIA

First edition	:	November	1963
Second edition	:	September	1966
Third edition	:	February	1969
Fourth edition	:	August	1971
Fifth edition	:	October	1976
Reprinted	:		1979
Sixth edition	:	December	1980
Reprinted	:		1981, 1984
Seventh edition	:		1985
Reprinted	:		1987
Eighth edition	:		1988
Reprinted	:		1995
(with certain amendments as per page nos. 87 to 93)			
Reprinted	:		1996, 1997, 1998, 1999
Ninth edition	:	January	2001
Reprinted	:		2003
Tenth edition	:	January	2005
Eleventh edition	:	January	2009
Reprinted	:	May	2009
Reprinted	:	December	2010
Twelfth edition	:	January	2019
ISBN	:	978-81-8441-180-5	
Price	:	₹ 250/-	
Published by	:	The Publication Department on behalf of "The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, ICAI Bhawan, Post Box No. 7100, Indraprastha Marg, New Delhi- 110 002, India.	
Printed by	:	Sahitya Bhawan Publications, Hospital Road, Agra 282 003 January/2019/P2396 (Revised)	

FOREWORD TO THE TWELFTH EDITION

The Ethics in contemporary terms is not a domain that has to be separate from the practical world, but is very much a part of it. It has to be inculcated in the habit and temperament of the individual, so that there is an overall culture of ethics; the force has to be strong enough to withstand any selfish motive or temptation. It is in this spirit of things that the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) requires its members to comply with the principles of ethics while performing their duties. The ethics for Chartered Accountants have, therefore, been codified as ethical compliance has always been a philosophy of the profession. The members of the Institute, whether in practice or in service, are required to comply with the provisions of Code of Ethics.

The eleventh edition of Code of Ethics for the first time adopted the provisions of International Federation of Accountants (IFAC) Code of Ethics for the professional accountants. The Part-A of the Code of Ethics was brought as a Guideline of the Council.

This revised Code of ICAI is also based on the 2018 edition of Code of Ethics issued by International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants (IESBA) and will be applicable from 1st April, 2020. Till then, the existing Code of ethics (11th edition) will continue to be effective. This revised edition of Code of Ethics is also being brought as Guideline of the Council.

The members may take note of the provisions of new Code. It is understood that the time period of more than one year will be sufficient to be conversant with the provisions of the new Code, so that members are aware about the revised provisions. With this, ICAI is all set to be converged with the latest edition of IESBA Code of Ethics, as per membership requirements of IFAC.

In bringing the revised publication, the Ethical Standards Board of ICAI has given critical time share in discussions on various aspects of the Code. I compliment the members of the Ethical Standards Board particularly CA. Sanjiv Kumar Chaudhary, Chairman and CA. Kemisha Soni, Vice-

Chairperson. I appreciate the efforts and contribution of the Secretariat of Ethical Standards Board in bringing out this publication.

I am happy and confident that the publication will take the profession to newer heights.

NEW DELHI
17th January, 2019

CA. NAVEEN N.D. GUPTA
President

PREFACE TO THE TWELFTH EDITION

With the changing business environment and increasing complexities, the ethical dilemmas faced by an accountant today is different from that faced by him a decade ago. Accordingly, it became imperative to revise the ethical framework for chartered accountants to keep pace with the changing dynamics of the profession.

Today, the members of the Institute are not restricted to professional assignments within the country or domestic employment opportunities. Further, even in the domestic domain, there are international clients and international perspectives. There is no denying the fact that the members have to keep abreast of what are the latest international developments. There is lot of research on ethics related issues done by International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants (IESBA). Its final recommendations are placed in its Code of Ethics, which is regularly updated. It is, therefore, important to refer and follow the provisions of Code of Ethics, based on IESBA Code of Ethics.

This revised Code is based on the 2018 edition of Code of Ethics issued by International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants (IESBA). IESBA is the ethics standards setting Committee of IFAC. The 2018 edition of Code has almost completely been rewritten by IESBA. The existing Independence sections (290 and 291) have been characterized as Independence Standards (Parts 4A and 4B) in the new Code. There is new pattern of structuring of each Section. The parts shown as Requirements establish general and specific obligations to be complied with by the members, while the Application material provides context, explanations, suggestions or actions, illustrations and other guidance to assist in complying with the requirements. Practical examples have been incorporated in the Code to illustrate different situations in which pressure might arise. There are dedicated provisions that apply to all professional accountants in all circumstances, when dealing with ethics and independence issues. There is emphasis that if threats cannot be addressed, the professional Accountant must decline or end the specific professional activity. The Accountant is required to form an overall

conclusion about whether the actions he takes, or intends to take, to address the threats created to eliminate those threats, or reduce them to an acceptable level. The revised edition of the Code has been made compatible with Indian conditions so that it does not contradict with Indian domestic law. Further, the provisions of the revised Code have been aligned with the provisions of Companies Act, 2013.

While the revised Code retains the fundamental ethical principles from the earlier code, it covers refreshed approach and contains certain new/ substantially revised requirements.

Some of the new requirements include:

- Certain additional terms such as Public Interest Entity (in the context of application of certain independence provisions- Employment with an audit client, Long Association of personnel, Non-assurance services to Audit client), Key Audit Partner (in the context of partner rotation), “Relative” as defined under the Companies Act, 2013 are reckoned if the client is a company while “immediate family” and “close family” are reckoned in case of other clients, Responding to Non-Compliance of Laws and Regulations (NOCLAR)
- Section for Chartered Accountants in service considering the fundamental and crucial role played by such accountants in the financial reporting supply chain and facilitating effective governance in organisations.
- Enhanced description of inducements with a view to respond to continuing concerns about bribery and corruption.
- Stronger independence provisions concerning long association of personnel (including partner rotation) with audit clients.
- A more robust framework for addressing a breach of the requirements of the Code.
- Section dealing with ‘Management Responsibilities’. The Code contains a description of activities that would, and would not, be

generally regarded as a management responsibility and provides enhanced guidance.

- Requirement restricting audit team members and Key Audit Partners from being compensated for providing non-assurance services to audit clients.
- Requirements and applicable guidance addressing situations where, as a result of a merger or acquisition, an entity becomes a related entity of an audit client, to assist the Chartered Accountant in evaluating previous or current interests and relationships.
- Provisions relating to threats that are created by certain tax services.
- Requirement where the total gross annual professional fees from the audit client and its related entities exceed 15% of the total fees of the firm for two consecutive years.
- Detailed independence requirements included for assurance engagements.
- Auditor rotation requirements included under various local regulations.

In particular, responding to Non-Compliance of Laws and Regulations (NOCLAR) is one of the new features in the revised Code. In the course of providing a professional service to a client or carrying out professional activities for an employer, a professional accountant may come across an instance of NOCLAR or suspected NOCLAR committed or about to be committed by the client or the employer, or by those charged with governance, management or employees of the client or employer. Recognizing that such a situation can often be a difficult and stressful one for the professional accountant, and accepting that he has a prima facie ethical responsibility not to turn a blind eye to the matter, the IESBA has incorporated this feature to help guide the professional accountant in dealing with the situation and in deciding how best to serve the public interest in these circumstances.

I acknowledge the contribution of all my council colleagues and particular the support provided by Audit & Assurance Standards Board led by CA Shyam Lal Agarwal, Chairman.

I thankfully acknowledge the contribution of all members of Ethical Standards Board. Special thanks is also acknowledged to CA. Divya Upadhya, Special Invitee in bringing out this publication.

I also compliment Shri Ashish Swaroop Bhatnagar, Secretary, Ethical Standards Board and CA. Neeta Gupta for their efforts and valuable contribution in revising the Code of Ethics.

NEW DELHI
17th January, 2019

CA. SANJIV KUMAR CHAUDHARY
Chairman, Ethical Standards Board

FOREWORD TO SECOND REPRINT OF THE ELEVENTH EDITION

Ethics is something which comes from within of an individual. But equally true is that the complexity which the world has acquired today has created need for a vigilant system of ethics for the professionals. This is more true for the profession of chartered accountants, as the society in general, and governments, clients, taxing authorities, employees, investors, the business and financial community in particular, have reposed tremendous trust in their services.

The Council of Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) brought the first edition of the Code of Ethics, then 'Code of Conduct', in 1963. Since then, the Code has been constantly updated from time to time to keep it relevant to the profession. The present (eleventh) edition of Code of Ethics, incorporates for the first time ever, the provisions of International Federation of Accountants (IFAC) Code of Ethics, thus complying with the membership obligation of ICAI towards IFAC. The two parts of the Code, one incorporating provisions of IFAC Code of Ethics, and the other based on the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, compliment each other and together constitute perhaps one of the best Code for a profession.

It is my pleasure to inform that the further modifications in the Code of Ethics, 2009 are underway in view of the revised edition (2010) of IFAC Code of Ethics.

I am convinced that the reprint edition of the Code would take us to still greater heights and we outshine others and gain edge over others, nationally and internationally.

NEW DELHI
31st December, 2010

CA. AMARJIT CHOPRA
President

FOREWORD TO THE REPRINT OF ELEVENTH EDITION

Every professional ethics in the world require a high toned morally and integrity. It considers the rightness and wrongness of man's conduct. It is a source of justifiable pride to a professional to consider the great role members of his profession have played to maintain the human values in order to strengthen the social structure and finally the public interest.

The Code of Ethics is a guiding force to the members of the profession and today the professionals act totally on the principles enunciated in the Code of Ethics. It is not for getting the examination passed and acquiring the qualification but it is required to be followed in line and spirit.

Recently the Council of the Institute has notified the advertisement guidelines and Council General Guidelines-2008 to strengthen the impact of profession on the globalized economy by finding a level playing field on the changing scenario.

In the present reprint-edition the provisions of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC) Code of Ethics have been incorporated in order to compliance of membership obligations of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) and to facilitate the participation of the members of Institute in global business.

I am sure that the members will appreciate the spirit of the provisions of this edition of the Code of Ethics and will be benefited to a great extent.

NEW DELHI
25th May, 2009

CA. UTTAM PRAKASH AGARWAL
President

FOREWORD TO THE ELEVENTH EDITION

The Ethics is the science of morals in human conduct. Moral principles and Rules of Conduct impose obligations and withdraw certain areas of conduct from free option of the individual to do as he likes. The professional ethics is based on morality and it interprets the compliance for the specific working of a particular profession in order to achieve the mission of building the best social environment.

Human nature being what it is, a man often places his personal gain above service. Therefore, persons who as individuals and as a class, are willing to place public good above their personal gain have enjoyed respect and honour. But such a relationship can be maintained or enhanced only if the professional body to which they belong would interpret the concept of public interest as broadly as possible. The respect and confidence enjoyed by a profession, to a great extent, is dependent on the strictness and scrupulousness with which such a code is adhered to by self discipline. When in public practice, an accountant should both be, and appear to be, free of any interest which might be regarded, whatever its actual effect, as being incompatible with integrity and objectivity.

The over-riding motto has been 'pride of service in preference to personal gain'. A code of professional conduct may have the force of law, as is the case in this country in some matters, as well as the result of discipline and conventions voluntarily established by the members, any breach whereof would result in the person being disentitled to continue as a member of the professional body. In any event, it has a great deal of practical value in so far as it proclaims to the public that the members of the profession will discharge their duties and responsibilities, having regard to the public interest. This, in turn, will give an assurance to the public that in the event of a member straying away from the path of duty, he would be suitably dealt with by the professional body. The self imposed discipline is necessary to earn respect as sometimes, some act or omission may not fall strictly under any clause of the Schedules yet it may be contrary to the ethics. The professionals are expected to withstand such tests of professional integrity.

A need was felt to revise the existing Code of Ethics with a view to meet the ethical requirements in view of the amendment in The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949 and in the changing scenario of increasing participation in the

accountancy profession worldwide. While revising the Code of Ethics, the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) has adopted the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC) Code of Ethics for professional accountants subject to the variances, wherever required, have been made to make it compatible with Indian laws. The provisions of this Code of Ethics are more stringent than those of IFAC Code. The adoption of IFAC Code is a step towards compliance of ICAI's membership obligations of IFAC.

In bringing out this publication, the Ethical Standards Board and the Study Group constituted for the revision of the Code, has given their considerable time in discussions on each and every part of the Code. In this publication the Board has incorporated and presented very nicely all the decisions of the Council on ethical issues as well as the decisions of the Courts on disciplinary cases. Part – A of the Code has been issued as 'Guidelines of the Council'.

I must compliment the members of the Study Group and the Board particularly Shri J. N. Shah, Chairman and Shri V. C. James, Vice-Chairman & Convener of the Study Group, for achieving this difficult task in a short time.

I record my appreciation for contribution of Shri N.P.Singh, Secretary of the Board and the officials of the Institute in bringing out this publication in record time.

I am confident that this publication will be of great help to all the members of the Institute.

NEW DELHI
14th January, 2009

VED JAIN
President

FOREWORD TO THE TENTH EDITION

A distinguishing mark of the accountancy profession is acceptance of its responsibility to the public. The accountancy profession's public consists of clients, credit guarantors, governments, employers, employees, investors, the business and financial community and others who rely on the objectivity and integrity of a professional accountant to maintain the orderly functioning of economic order. This reliance imposes a public interest responsibility on the accountancy profession.

The Information Technology revolution and globalization of economy have changed the world for ever and every profession is facing challenges in this era of tough competition. Accountability of any profession is crucial for its survival and prosperity. In formulating the Code of Ethics for the profession, the Institute has always considered the motto "Pride of service in preference to personal gain" as a litmus test. User expectation and public perception are crucial criteria while formulating the Code of Ethics so that there should not be any expectation gap between the "standards expected" and "those prescribed". The Code of Ethics was last revised in January 2001. Since then, the Council considered various concerns of the profession and the interest of the society generally as well as the expectations of the stakeholders in particular.

Whether the notification imposing ceiling on non-audit fees, norms relaxing the criteria in responding to tenders of government agency or similar organizations or permitting the members to publish passport size photograph in their website, the Council, at its own wisdom, appreciated the changing scenario in the world order and the emerging opportunities of the profession. At the same time, the Council ensured that the ethical standards for the profession should be complied with at any cost. We feel proud that the Institute has always marched beyond the expectation of the society and the members have always considered as their solemn responsibility to comply with the ethical standards prescribed by the Council. In this era of globalized economy, our members are marching confidently ahead to provide the globally acceptable solutions to the world community.

In bringing out this publication, the Committee on Ethical Standards Unjustified Removal of Auditors (CESURA) has done an excellent job. I learnt that the Committee while updating and revising the draft, had

requested the Past Presidents to give their views/suggestions and the suggestions received have been appreciated. I gratefully acknowledge their valuable contribution.

To update the Code, the Committee has incorporated very nicely all the decisions of the Council on Ethical issues as well as the decisions on disciplinary cases.

I wish to place on record my deep appreciation & compliment for Shri Abhijit Bandyopadhyay, Chairman, Committee on Ethical Standards & Unjustified Removal of Auditors and its other members.

I appreciate the efforts & contribution of Dr. Alok Ray, Secretary to the Committee and the officials of Institute for this commendable job.

I have no doubt that this publication will make our members more confident and comfortable to carry out their professional jobs in this new world order.

NEW DELHI
21st January, 2005

SUNIL GOYAL
President

FOREWORD TO THE NINTH EDITION

The maintenance of ethical standards is the collective concern of the Institute as well as all members of the profession. The ideal situation, of course, would be that the maintenance of ethical standards at individual member level is so self-evident that its further mention need not be made. However, the human nature being what it is, a man may often place his personal gain above service. Therefore, it is necessary to keep on reinforcing the idea of keeping up and observing the highest ethical standards repeatedly. With this end in view and also keeping in mind the need to adhere to our creed “Excellence, Independence and Integrity”, it is a pleasure to release this publication with the new title “Code of Ethics” as decided by the Council. These values of profession need to be further institutionalised and globalised. Therefore, the Council of the Institute has recently permitted the members of the Institute to post their particulars on the Website. The detailed guidelines are contained in the new publication.

I am confident that the members of the profession, in general and the younger members in particular would definitely strive hard in the interest of upholding the professional image in the years to come and also to reduce the expectation gap.

In bringing out this publication, the Committee on Ethical Standards & Unjustified Removal of Auditors (CESURA) and Council held various long meetings. All the members of CESURA, particularly its Chairmen, Shri A.K. Chakraborty, Shri N.K. Gupta, Shri A.C. Shah, Shri S.C. Bhadra and some of its other members, namely Shri P.N. Shah, Shri A.H. Dalal, Shri S.P. Chhajed, Shri G. Sitharaman (also past-Presidents) and Shri Ashok Chandak (now Vice-President) have been very active in giving their valuable inputs and very useful and educative suggestions. Shri Chandak’s interpretation of complicated legal aspects of the subject facilitated the work of the Committee and the Council and was highly appreciated. Shri Bhadra’s continuous impetus in completing the task led the publication to its finality.

The Secretariat of CESURA headed by Shri G.D. Khurana who is Secretary of the Committee and possessing long experience in Disciplinary, Ethical and Legal matters of the Institute and his colleague Shri Neeraj Srivastava, Assistant Secretary need to be specifically mentioned as they have contributed a lot in facilitating the completion of updating the publication by,

inter alia, summarising and placing at appropriate places the various decisions of the Council and Judgements of Courts etc.

I am confident that this publication which contains relevant extract, from decisions and pronouncements which have been made, from time to time, by the Council along with Council's perception of major issues, will go a long way for the assistance of the members. It will also assist both old and new members in addressing the issues/problems of the professional conduct which they face in their day to day professional life.

NEW DELHI
13th August, 2001

N.D. GUPTA
President

FOREWORD TO THE EIGHTH EDITION

The “Code of Conduct” is essentially a set of professional ethical standards, regulating the relationship of Chartered Accountants with their clients, employers, employees, fellow members of the group and the public generally. According to the International Federation of Accountants, the ethical requirements of any accountancy body should be based on integrity, objectivity, independence, confidentiality, high technical standards, professional competence and above all on ethical behaviour. The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949 and the Schedules to the Act set out the acceptable forms of behaviour of the members of the profession.

However, during the last 40 years since the Act came into force, certain conventions have been voluntarily established by the members of the profession which have enhanced the respect and confidence enjoyed by the profession. The Council of the Institute has been adhering to these principles strictly and scrupulously in order to maintain the reputation of the profession.

The first edition of the “Code of Conduct” was published in 1963 and ever since six more editions of the Code have been out incorporating the changes that had taken place from time to time. The present Council felt the need to have a self-contained document which is both up-to-date and currently relevant. The present edition is a result of this painstaking and elaborate exercise.

The revised Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1988, which have replaced the Chartered Accountants Regulations 1964, the recent decisions of the Council in administering the Code of Conduct, the various statements on auditing practices and accounting standards, which are now mandatory, etc. are reflected in the present Code.

The Council wishes to place on record its appreciation and gratitude to Sarvashri S. Nandagopal, A.K. Chakraborty, S.C. Bafna, Y. Soli and the members and Secretary of the Ethical Standards Committee for their painstaking work in revising, updating and editing this Code. The Council has also taken this opportunity to include the latest case laws and delete the obsolete ones.

I have great pleasure in bringing out this Eighth Edition of the Code of Conduct for the guidance of members and students. I hope this booklet will be of assistance to them in resolving their doubts in the ethical problems confronted by them in the course of their professional duties.

NEW DELHI

5th July, 1988

S.K. DASGUPTA

President

FOREWORD TO THE SEVENTH EDITION

Since the publication of the Sixth edition of the booklet Code of Conduct in 1980, the Council has enunciated many ethical principles and rules touching those areas with which members have immediate concern. Some of these areas pertain to responding to tenders, use of the designation Chartered Accountant in invitation cards, guidelines for members accepting directorships of Public Companies, the requirements of Sections 224 and 225 of the Companies Act, 1956 in regard to the appointment and change of auditors, handling of clients money by the members and so on. In these areas, the Council has given clarifications and relaxations wherever found necessary so that members may find it easier to overcome ethical doubts and dilemmas.

I have pleasure in bringing out the revised edition of the booklet for the benefit of the members and students.

17th December, 1985

P.A. NAIR

President

FOREWORD TO THE FIFTH EDITION

In this Fifth Edition of the booklet Code of Conduct several additions have been made by incorporating the various decisions of the Council taken since the publication of the last edition relating to the maintenance of Ethical Standards by the members.

I have pleasure in bringing out the revised edition of the booklet for the continued benefit of the members and students.

NEW DELHI

4th October, 1976

B.R. MAHESHWARI

President

FOREWORD TO THE FOURTH EDITION

This fourth edition of the booklet Code of Conduct has been revised and brought up-to-date. A noteworthy feature of this new edition is that several relaxations made by the Council regarding ethical requirements regarding publicity by members of the Institute have been incorporated. These relate to publication of Group Headings of Chartered Accountants in the Telephone Directory, appearance on radio, television and films, appointments to positions of local or national importance, giving talks or lectures or attending a Conference and writing articles or letters to the Press on subjects connected with the profession. A paragraph has been added on the question of lien upon documents belonging to clients. This edition also includes notifications on disabilities for acceptance of appointment as Cost Auditor, liability of a Chartered Accountant who accepts audit of a Company while he is an employee of the cost auditor of the Company and liability of a Chartered Accountant when he expresses his opinion on financial statements of any business or enterprise in which his relatives have a substantial interest.

In the maintenance of the ethical standards expected of the members, I trust that the booklet will continue to be of immense help.

NEW DELHI

31st August, 1971

M.C. BHANDARI

President

FOREWORD TO THE THIRD EDITION

The booklet was first published in November 1963. It was revised in September 1966, so as to bring it in line with the Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1964 which came in force on 18th July, 1964, as several changes had been introduced in the Regulations and the numbering of the Regulations and the headings as they appeared in the Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1949 had also been modified. Certain further guidelines issued by the Council were also incorporated in the second edition along with a new notification on the liability of Chartered Accountants in employment. This third edition includes in addition, a notification issued by the Council subsequently covering misconduct in connection with elections.

I trust that this booklet will help members to maintain the ethical standards expected of them.

NEW DELHI

1st January, 1969

R. VENKATESAN

President

FOREWORD TO THE FIRST EDITION

This booklet, published under the authority of the Council, is being sent to all members of the Institute and it is hoped that it will give guidance to them on the observance of a healthy code of professional ethics.

The booklet basically gives elaborate explanations, where necessary with illustrations, on the various items comprised in the Schedules to the Chartered Accountants Act, and is by no means meant to be exhaustive of all acts of omission and commission which may constitute professional misconduct. No booklet of this nature can achieve the object of outlining every possible act which may or may not constitute sound ethical conduct because the practice of professional ethics is largely a matter of conscience and the determination of members to distinguish between what is right and wrong.

Ethics is a state of the mind, and there may be some act which, though it may not strictly fall under one of the items of the Schedule, may be one which may not be proper by any moral or ethical standards. In the larger interests of the Institute, the Council exhorts all members to search their hearts and conscience whenever in doubt, and thereby assist towards the maintenance of high principles of professional conduct established by the Council.

As members are aware, the Council has, during the last 14 years, exercised its disciplinary jurisdiction judiciously but without fear or favour, and has built up a record of healthy traditions of which it can be justly proud. The highest standards of ethical behaviour can only evolve from the conduct of members and the Council feels sure that whenever members are confronted with two interpretations on a matter relating to professional conduct—one ethical and the other legalistic—they would adopt the stricter interpretation than the more liberal one, even though the latter may be perfectly legal.

The exercise of the highest ethical standards, which ensures the progress of our Institute, is in the hands of the members themselves.

I would be failing in my duty if I did not acknowledge, with grateful thanks of the Council, the tremendous efforts put into this work by Mr. N.R. Mody, the senior-most Member of the Council, who has brought to bear on this memorandum his wide experience of disciplinary matters extending over a period of fourteen years.

BOMBAY

25th October, 1963

R.C. COOPER

President

CONTENTS

	Page
Foreword and Preface	iii-xxiv
Guide to the Code	II-VII
Part 1 – Complying with the Code, Fundamental Principles and Conceptual Framework	1-20
Part 2 – Professional Accountants in Service	21-67
Part 3 – Professional Accountants In Public Practice Independence Standards (Parts 4A and 4B)	68-123
Part 4A Independence for Audit and Review Engagements	124-230
Part 4B Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements	231-276
Glossary, Including Lists of Abbreviations	277-292
Effective Date	293

GUIDE TO THE CODE

(This Guide is a non-authoritative aid to using the Code.)

Purpose of the Code

This Code of Ethics is applicable from 1 April, 2020. Where guidance contained in this Code relates to engagements commencing prior to that date, guidance contained in eleventh (2009) edition of the Code may be applied up to completion of the said engagements. Transitional arrangements are available in respect of specific sections of this Code.

This Code has been derived from the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants (IESBA) Code of Ethics, 2018 issued by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

1. The *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (Including Independence Standards)* (“Code of Ethics” or “the Code”) sets out fundamental principles of ethics for professional accountants (hereinafter also called as “accountants”), reflecting the profession’s recognition of its public interest responsibility. These principles establish the standard of behaviour expected of a professional accountant. The fundamental principles are: integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality, and professional behaviour.
2. The Code provides a conceptual framework that professional accountants are to apply in order to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. The Code sets out requirements and application material on various topics to help accountants apply the conceptual framework to those topics.
3. In the case of audits, reviews and other assurance engagements, the Code sets out *Independence Standards*, established by the application of the conceptual framework to threats to independence in relation to these engagements.

How the Code is structured

4. The Code contains the following material:
 - Part 1 – *Complying with the Code, Fundamental Principles and*

Conceptual Framework, which includes the fundamental principles and the conceptual framework and is applicable to all professional accountants.

- Part 2 – *Professional Accountants in Service*, which sets out additional material that applies to professional accountants in service when performing professional activities. Professional accountants in service include professional accountants employed, engaged or contracted in an executive or non-executive capacity in, for example:
 - Commerce, industry or service.
 - The public sector.
 - Education.
 - The not-for-profit sector.
 - Regulatory or professional bodies.

Part 2 is also applicable to individuals who are professional accountants in public practice when performing professional activities pursuant to their relationship with the firm as an employee.

- Part 3 – *Professional Accountants in Public Practice*, which sets out additional material that applies to professional accountants in public practice when providing professional services.
- *Independence Standards*, which sets out additional material that applies to professional accountants in public practice when providing assurance services, as follows:
 - Part 4A – *Independence for Audit and Review Engagements*, which applies when performing audit or review engagements.
 - Part 4B – *Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements*, which applies when performing assurance engagements that are not audit or review engagements.
- *Glossary*, which contains defined terms (together with

additional explanations where appropriate) and described terms which have a specific meaning in certain parts of the Code. For example, as noted in the Glossary, in Part 4A, the term “audit engagement” applies equally to both audit and review engagements. The Glossary also includes lists of abbreviations that are used in the Code and other standards to which the Code refers.

5. The Code contains sections which address specific topics. Some sections contain subsections dealing with specific aspects of those topics. Each section of the Code is structured, where appropriate, as follows:
 - Introduction – sets out the subject matter addressed within the section, and introduces the requirements and application material in the context of the conceptual framework. Introductory material contains information, including an explanation of terms used, which is important to the understanding and application of each Part and its sections.
 - Requirements – establish general and specific obligations with respect to the subject matter addressed.
 - Application material – provides context, explanations, suggestions for actions or matters to consider, illustrations and other guidance to assist in complying with the requirements.

How to Use the Code

The Fundamental Principles, Independence and Conceptual Framework

6. The Code requires professional accountants to comply with the fundamental principles of ethics. The Code also requires them to apply the conceptual framework to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Applying the conceptual framework requires exercising professional judgment, remaining alert for new information and to changes in facts and circumstances, and using the reasonable and informed third party test.
7. The conceptual framework recognizes that the existence of conditions, policies and procedures established by the profession,

legislation, regulation, the firm, or the employing organization might impact the identification of threats. Those conditions, policies and procedures might also be a relevant factor in the professional accountant's evaluation of whether a threat is at an acceptable level. When threats are not at an acceptable level, the conceptual framework requires the accountant to address those threats. Applying safeguards is one way that threats might be addressed. Safeguards are actions individually or in combination that the accountant takes that effectively reduce threats to an acceptable level.

8. In addition, the Code requires professional accountants to be independent when performing audit, review and other assurance engagements. The conceptual framework applies in the same way to identifying, evaluating and addressing threats to independence as to threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.
9. Complying with the Code requires knowing, understanding and applying:
 - All of the relevant provisions of a particular section in the context of Part 1, together with the additional material set out in Sections 200, 300, 400 and 900, as applicable.
 - All of the relevant provisions of a particular section, for example, applying the provisions that are set out under the subheadings titled "General" and "All Audit Clients" together with additional specific provisions, including those set out under the subheadings titled "Audit Clients that are not Public Interest Entities" or "Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities."
 - All of the relevant provisions set out in a particular section together with any additional provisions set out in any relevant subsection.

Requirements and Application Material

10. Requirements and application material are to be read and applied with the objective of complying with the fundamental principles, applying the conceptual framework and, when performing audit, review and other assurance engagements, being independent.

Requirements

11. Requirements are designated with the letter “R” and, in most cases, include the word “shall.” The word “shall” in the Code imposes an obligation on a professional accountant or firm to comply with the specific provision in which “shall” has been used.
12. In some situations, the Code provides a specific exception to a requirement. In such a situation, the provision is designated with the letter “R” but uses “may” or conditional wording.
13. When the word “may” is used in the Code, it denotes permission to take a particular action in certain circumstances, including as an exception to a requirement. It is not used to denote possibility.
14. When the word “might” is used in the Code, it denotes the possibility of a matter arising, an event occurring or a course of action being taken. The term does not ascribe any particular level of possibility or likelihood when used in conjunction with a threat, as the evaluation of the level of a threat depends on the facts and circumstances of any particular matter, event or course of action.

Application Material

15. In addition to requirements, the Code contains application material that provides context relevant to a proper understanding of the Code. In particular, the application material is intended to help a professional accountant to understand how to apply the conceptual framework to a particular set of circumstances and to understand and comply with a specific requirement. While such application material does not of itself impose a requirement, consideration of the material is necessary to the proper application of the requirements of the Code, including application of the conceptual framework. Application material is designated with the letter “A.”
16. Where application material includes lists of examples, these lists are not intended to be exhaustive.

Appendix to Guide to the Code

17. The Appendix to this Guide provides an overview of the Code.

Appendix to Guide to the Code

OVERVIEW OF THE CODE

PART 1

COMPLYING WITH THE CODE, FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES AND CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK

(ALL PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS - SECTIONS 100 TO 199)

PART 2

PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN Service

(SECTIONS 200 TO 299)

(PART 2 IS ALSO APPLICABLE TO
INDIVIDUAL PROFESSIONAL
ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE
WHEN PERFORMING PROFESSIONAL
ACTIVITIES PURSUANT TO THEIR
RELATIONSHIP WITH THE FIRM)

PART 3

PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE

(SECTIONS 300 TO 399)

INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS

(PARTS 4A AND 4B)

**PART 4A – INDEPENDENCE FOR
AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS**
(SECTIONS 400 TO 899)

**PART 4B – INDEPENDENCE FOR
ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER
THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW
ENGAGEMENTS**
(SECTIONS 900 TO 999)

GLOSSARY

(ALL PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS)

CODE OF ETHICS FOR PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS (including INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART 1	COMPLYING WITH THE CODE, FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES AND CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK	1-20
100	COMPLYING WITH THE CODE	2
110	THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES	4
111	INTEGRITY	5
112	OBJECTIVITY	6
113	PROFESSIONAL COMPETENCE AND DUE CARE	6
114	CONFIDENTIALITY	7
115	PROFESSIONAL BEHAVIOUR	9
120	THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK	11
PART 2	PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN SERVICE	21-67
200	APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK – PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN SERVICE	22
210	CONFLICTS OF INTEREST	28
220	PREPARATION AND PRESENTATION OF INFORMATION	32
230	ACTING WITH SUFFICIENT EXPERTISE	38
240	FINANCIAL INTERESTS, COMPENSATION AND INCENTIVES LINKED TO FINANCIAL REPORTING AND DECISION MAKING	40
250	INDUCEMENTS, INCLUDING GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY	42
260	RESPONDING TO NON-COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS IN CASE OF EMPLOYMENT WITH LISTED ENTITIES	50
270	PRESSURE TO BREACH THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES	63

PART 3	PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE	68-123
300	APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK – PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE	69
310	CONFLICTS OF INTEREST	78
320	PROFESSIONAL APPOINTMENTS	86
321	SECOND OPINIONS	93
330	FEES AND OTHER TYPES OF REMUNERATION	95
340	INDUCEMENTS, INCLUDING GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY	100
350	CUSTODY OF CLIENT ASSETS	108
360	RESPONDING TO NON-COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS DURING THE COURSE OF AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS OF LISTED ENTITIES	110
PART 4A	INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS (PARTS 4A AND 4B)	
	INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS	124-230
400	APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS	126
410	FEES	143
411	COMPENSATION AND EVALUATION POLICIES	148
420	GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY	150
430	ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION	151
510	FINANCIAL INTERESTS	152
511	LOANS AND GUARANTEES	159
520	BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS	163
521	FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS	166
522	RECENT SERVICE WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT	171

CODE OF ETHICS

523	SERVING AS A DIRECTOR OR OFFICER OF AN AUDIT CLIENT	173
524	EMPLOYMENT WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT	175
525	TEMPORARY PERSONNEL ASSIGNMENTS	179
540	LONG ASSOCIATION OF PERSONNEL (INCLUDING PARTNER ROTATION) WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT	181
550	AUDITOR ROTATION	190
600	PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO AN AUDIT CLIENT	194
601	ACCOUNTING AND BOOKKEEPING SERVICES	201
602	ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES	205
603	VALUATION SERVICES	205
604	TAX SERVICES	207
605	INTERNAL AUDIT SERVICES	214
606	INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SYSTEMS SERVICES	215
607	LITIGATION SUPPORT SERVICES	218
608	LEGAL SERVICES	219
609	RECRUITING SERVICES	221
610	CORPORATE FINANCE SERVICES	224
800	REPORTS ON SPECIAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS THAT INCLUDE A RESTRICTION ON USE AND DISTRIBUTION (AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS)	227
PART 4B INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS		231-276
900	APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS	232
905	FEES	242

906	GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY	245
907	ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION	246
910	FINANCIAL INTERESTS	247
911	LOANS AND GUARANTEES	251
920	BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS	253
921	FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS	255
922	RECENT SERVICE WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT	259
923	SERVING AS A DIRECTOR OR OFFICER OF AN ASSURANCE CLIENT	261
924	EMPLOYMENT WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT	263
940	LONG ASSOCIATION OF PERSONNEL WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT	266
950	PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO ASSURANCE CLIENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENT CLIENTS	269
990	REPORTS THAT INCLUDE A RESTRICTION ON USE AND DISTRIBUTION (ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS)	274
	GLOSSARY, INCLUDING LISTS OF ABBREVIATIONS	277-292

**PART 1 COMPLYING WITH THE CODE, FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES
AND CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK**

	Page
Section 100 Complying with the Code	2
Section 110 The Fundamental Principles	4
Subsection 111 – Integrity	5
Subsection 112 – Objectivity.....	6
Subsection 113 – Professional Competence and Due Care	6
Subsection 114 – Confidentiality.....	7
Subsection 115 – Professional Behaviour	9
Section 120 The Conceptual Framework.....	11

PART 1
COMPLYING WITH THE CODE, FUNDAMENTAL
PRINCIPLES AND CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK

SECTION 100

COMPLYING WITH THE CODE

General

- 100.1 A1 A distinguishing mark of the accountancy profession is its acceptance of the responsibility to act in the public interest. A professional accountant's responsibility is not exclusively to satisfy the needs of an individual client or employing organization. Therefore, the Code contains requirements and application material to enable professional accountants to meet their responsibility to act in the public interest.
- 100.2 A1 The requirements in the Code, designated with the letter "R," impose obligations.
- 100.2 A2 Application material, designated with the letter "A," provides context, explanations, suggestions for actions or matters to consider, illustrations and other guidance relevant to a proper understanding of the Code. In particular, the application material is intended to help a professional accountant to understand how to apply the conceptual framework to a particular set of circumstances and to understand and comply with a specific requirement. While such application material does not of itself impose a requirement, consideration of the material is necessary to the proper application of the requirements of the Code, including application of the conceptual framework.
- R100.3** A professional accountant shall comply with the Code. There might be circumstances where laws or regulations preclude an accountant from complying with certain parts of the Code. In such circumstances, those laws and regulations prevail, and the accountant shall comply with all other parts of the Code.
- 100.3 A1 The principle of professional behaviour requires a professional

CODE OF ETHICS

accountant to comply with relevant laws and regulations. Accountants need to be aware of differences in local regulations from the provisions as set out in the Code, and comply with the more stringent provisions unless prohibited by law or regulation.

Breaches of the Code

R100.4 Paragraphs R400.80 to R400.89 and R900.50 to R900.55 address a breach of *Independence Standards*. A professional accountant who identifies a breach of any other provision of the Code shall evaluate the significance of the breach and its impact on the accountant's ability to comply with the fundamental principles. The accountant shall also:

- (a) Take whatever actions might be available, as soon as possible, to address the consequences of the breach satisfactorily; and
- (b) Determine whether to report the breach to the relevant parties.

100.4 A1 Relevant parties to whom such a breach might be reported include those who might have been affected by it.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 110

THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

General

110.1 A1 There are five fundamental principles of ethics for professional accountants:

- (a) Integrity – to be straightforward and honest in all professional and business relationships.
- (b) Objectivity – not to compromise professional or business judgments because of bias, conflict of interest or undue influence of others.
- (c) Professional Competence and Due Care – to:
 - (i) Attain and maintain professional knowledge and skill at the level required to ensure that a client or employing organization receives competent professional service, based on current technical and professional standards and relevant legislation; and
 - (ii) Act diligently and in accordance with applicable technical and professional standards.
- (d) Confidentiality – to respect the confidentiality of information acquired as a result of professional and business relationships.
- (e) Professional Behaviour – to comply with relevant laws and regulations and avoid any conduct that the professional accountant knows or should know might discredit the profession.

R110.2 A professional accountant shall comply with each of the fundamental principles.

110.2 A1 The fundamental principles of ethics establish the standard of behaviour expected of a professional accountant. The conceptual framework establishes the approach which an accountant is required to apply to assist in complying with those fundamental principles. Subsections 111 to 115 set out

CODE OF ETHICS

requirements and application material related to each of the fundamental principles.

110.2 A2 A professional accountant might face a situation in which complying with one fundamental principle conflicts with complying with one or more other fundamental principles. In such a situation, the accountant might consider consulting, with:

- Others within the firm or employing organization.
- Those charged with governance.
- Institute
- Legal counsel.

However, such consultation does not relieve the accountant from the responsibility to exercise professional judgment to resolve the conflict or, if necessary, and unless prohibited by law or regulation, disassociate from the matter creating the conflict.

110.2 A3 The professional accountant is encouraged to document the substance of the issue, the details of any discussions, the decisions made and the rationale for those decisions.

SUBSECTION 111 – INTEGRITY

R111.1 A professional accountant shall comply with the principle of integrity, which requires an accountant to be straightforward and honest in all professional and business relationships.

111.1 A1 Integrity implies fair dealing and truthfulness.

R111.2 A professional accountant shall not knowingly be associated with reports, returns, communications or other information where the accountant believes that the information:

- 111.** Contains a materially false or misleading statement;
- 112.** Contains statements or information provided negligently; or
- 113.** Omits or obscures required information where such omission or obscurity would be misleading.

111.2 A1 If a professional accountant provides a modified report in

CODE OF ETHICS

respect of such a report, return, communication or other information, the accountant is not in breach of paragraph R111.2.

- R111.3** When a professional accountant becomes aware of having been associated with information described in paragraph R111.2, the accountant shall take steps to be disassociated from that information.

SUBSECTION 112 – OBJECTIVITY

- R112.1** A professional accountant shall comply with the principle of objectivity, which requires an accountant not to compromise professional or business judgment because of bias, conflict of interest or undue influence of others.
- R112.2** A professional accountant shall not undertake a professional activity if a circumstance or relationship unduly influences the accountant's professional judgment regarding that activity.

SUBSECTION 113 – PROFESSIONAL COMPETENCE AND DUE CARE

- R113.1** A professional accountant shall comply with the principle of professional competence and due care, which requires an accountant to:
- 111.** Attain and maintain professional knowledge and skill at the level required to ensure that a client or employing organization receives competent professional service, based on current technical and professional standards and relevant legislation; and
 - 112.** Act diligently and in accordance with applicable technical and professional standards.
- 113.1 A1 Serving clients and employing organizations with professional competence requires the exercise of sound judgment in applying professional knowledge and skill when undertaking professional activities.
- 113.1 A2 Maintaining professional competence requires a continuing awareness and an understanding of relevant technical,

CODE OF ETHICS

professional and business developments. Continuing professional development enables a professional accountant to develop and maintain the capabilities to perform competently within the professional environment.

- 113.1 A3 Diligence encompasses the responsibility to act in accordance with the requirements of an assignment, carefully, thoroughly and on a timely basis.
- R113.2** In complying with the principle of professional competence and due care, a professional accountant shall take reasonable steps to ensure that those working in a professional capacity under the accountant's authority have appropriate training and supervision.
- R113.3** Where appropriate, a professional accountant shall make clients, the employing organization, or other users of the accountant's professional services or activities, aware of the limitations inherent in the services or activities.

SUBSECTION 114 – CONFIDENTIALITY

- R114.1** A professional accountant shall comply with the principle of confidentiality, which requires an accountant to respect the confidentiality of information acquired as a result of professional and employment relationships. An accountant shall:
- (a) Be alert to the possibility of inadvertent disclosure, including in a social environment, and particularly to a close business associate or an immediate or a close family member;
 - (b) Maintain confidentiality of information within the firm or employing organization;
 - (c) Maintain confidentiality of information disclosed by a prospective client or employing organization;
 - (d) Not disclose confidential information acquired as a result of professional and employment relationships outside the firm or employing organization without proper and specific authority, unless there is a legal or professional duty or right to disclose;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (e) Not use confidential information acquired as a result of professional and employment relationships for the personal advantage of the accountant or for the advantage of a third party;
 - (f) Not use or disclose any confidential information, either acquired or received as a result of a professional or employment relationship, after that relationship has ended; and
 - (g) Take reasonable steps to ensure that personnel under the accountant's control, and individuals from whom advice and assistance are obtained, respect the accountant's duty of confidentiality.
- 114.1 A1 Confidentiality serves the public interest because it facilitates the free flow of information from the professional accountant's client or employing organization to the accountant in the knowledge that the information will not be disclosed to a third party. Nevertheless, the following are circumstances where professional accountants are or might be required to disclose confidential information or when such disclosure might be appropriate:
- (a) Disclosure is required by law, for example:
 - (i) Production of documents or other provision of evidence in the course of legal proceedings; or
 - (ii) Disclosure to the appropriate public authorities of infringements of the law that come to light;
 - (b) Disclosure is permitted by law and is authorized by the client or the employing organization; and
 - (c) There is a professional duty or right to disclose, when not prohibited by law:
 - (i) To comply with the requirements of peer review or quality review of the Institute
 - (ii) To respond to an inquiry or investigation by a professional or regulatory body;
 - (iii) To protect the professional interests of a

CODE OF ETHICS

professional accountant in legal proceedings; or

- (iv) To comply with technical and professional standards, including ethics requirements.

114.1 A2 In deciding whether to disclose confidential information, factors to consider, depending on the circumstances, include:

- Whether the interests of any parties, including third parties whose interests might be affected, could be harmed if the client or employing organization consents to the disclosure of information by the professional accountant.
- Whether all the relevant information is known and substantiated, to the extent practicable. Factors affecting the decision to disclose include:
 - Unsubstantiated facts.
 - Incomplete information.
 - Unsubstantiated conclusions.
- The proposed type of communication, and to whom it is addressed.
- Whether the parties to whom the communication is addressed are appropriate recipients.

R114.2 A professional accountant shall continue to comply with the principle of confidentiality even after the end of the relationship between the accountant and a client or employing organization. When changing employment or acquiring a new client, the accountant is entitled to use prior experience but shall not use or disclose any confidential information acquired or received as a result of a professional or employment relationship.

SUBSECTION 115 – PROFESSIONAL BEHAVIOUR

R115.1 A professional accountant shall comply with the principle of professional behaviour, which requires an accountant to comply with relevant laws and regulations and avoid any conduct that the accountant knows or should know might discredit the profession. A professional accountant shall not knowingly engage in any employment, occupation or activity that impairs

CODE OF ETHICS

or might impair the integrity, objectivity or good reputation of the profession, and as a result would be incompatible with the fundamental principles.

115.1 A1 Conduct that might discredit the profession includes conduct that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude adversely affects the good reputation of the profession.

R115.2 When promoting himself and his work, a professional accountant shall not bring the profession into disrepute. A professional Accountant is required to conduct his affairs in a manner that he remains outside the boundaries of professional and other misconduct. A professional accountant shall be honest and truthful and shall not make:

- (a) Exaggerated claims for the services offered by, or the qualifications or experience of, the accountant; or
- (b) Disparaging references or unsubstantiated comparisons to the work of others.
- (c) Any direct or indirect measures to advertise any professional/other facts which are in violation of Advertisement Guidelines issued by the Council of the Institute from time to time.

115.2 A1 The professional accountant should ensure that the contents of an advertisement are true to the best of his knowledge and belief, and are in conformity with the Advertisement Guidelines, and be aware that the Institute does not own any responsibility, whatsoever, for such contents or claims by him. However, if a professional accountant is in doubt about whether a form of proposed advertising is appropriate, the accountant is encouraged to consult with the Ethical Standards Board of ICAI.

SECTION 120

THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK

Introduction

- 120.1 The circumstances in which professional accountants operate might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Section 120 sets out requirements and application material, including a conceptual framework, to assist accountants in complying with the fundamental principles and meeting their responsibility to act in the public interest. Such requirements and application material accommodate the wide range of facts and circumstances, including the various professional activities, interests and relationships that create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. In addition, they deter accountants from concluding that a situation is permitted solely because that situation is not specifically prohibited by the Code.
- 120.2 The conceptual framework specifies an approach for a professional accountant to:
- (a) Identify threats to compliance with the fundamental principles;
 - (b) Evaluate the threats identified; and
 - (c) Address the threats by eliminating or reducing them to an acceptable level.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R120.3** The professional accountant shall apply the conceptual framework to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles set out in Section 110.
- 120.3 A1 Additional requirements and application material that are relevant to the application of the conceptual framework are set out in:

CODE OF ETHICS

- (a) Part 2 – *Professional Accountants in Service*;
- (b) Part 3 – *Professional Accountants in Public Practice*; and
- (c) *Independence Standards*, as follows:
 - (i) Part 4A – *Independence for Audit and Review Engagements*; and
 - (ii) Part 4B – *Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements*.

R120.4 When dealing with an ethics issue, the professional accountant shall consider the context in which the issue has arisen or might arise. Where an individual who is a professional accountant in public practice is performing professional activities pursuant to the accountant's relationship with the firm, whether as a contractor, employee or owner, the individual shall comply with the provisions in Part 2 that apply to these circumstances.

R120.5 When applying the conceptual framework, the professional accountant shall:

- (a) Exercise professional judgment;
- (b) Remain alert for new information and to changes in facts and circumstances; and
- (c) Use the reasonable and informed third party test described in paragraph 120.5 A4.

Exercise of Professional Judgment

120.5 A1 Professional judgment involves the application of relevant training, professional knowledge, skill and experience commensurate with the facts and circumstances, including the nature and scope of the particular professional activities, and the interests and relationships involved. In relation to undertaking professional activities, the exercise of professional judgment is required when the professional accountant applies the conceptual framework in order to make informed decisions about the courses of actions available, and to determine whether such decisions are appropriate in the circumstances.

120.5 A2 An understanding of known facts and circumstances is a

CODE OF ETHICS

prerequisite to the proper application of the conceptual framework. Determining the actions necessary to obtain this understanding and coming to a conclusion about whether the fundamental principles have been complied with also require the exercise of professional judgment.

- 120.5 A3 In exercising professional judgment to obtain this understanding, the professional accountant might consider, among other matters, whether:
- There is reason to be concerned that potentially relevant information might be missing from the facts and circumstances known to the accountant.
 - There is an inconsistency between the known facts and circumstances and the accountant's expectations.
 - The accountant's expertise and experience are sufficient to reach a conclusion.
 - There is a need to consult with others with relevant expertise or experience.
 - The information provides a reasonable basis on which to reach a conclusion.
 - The accountant's own preconception or bias might be affecting the accountant's exercise of professional judgment.
 - There might be other reasonable conclusions that could be reached from the available information.

Reasonable and Informed Third Party

- 120.5 A4 The reasonable and informed third party test is a consideration by the professional accountant about whether the same conclusions would likely be reached by another party. Such consideration is made from the perspective of a reasonable and informed third party, who weighs all the relevant facts and circumstances that the accountant knows, or could reasonably be expected to know, at the time the conclusions are made. The reasonable and informed third party does not need to be an accountant, but would possess the relevant knowledge and

CODE OF ETHICS

experience to understand and evaluate the appropriateness of the accountant's conclusions in an impartial manner.

Identifying Threats

R120.6 The professional accountant shall identify threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.

120.6 A1 An understanding of the facts and circumstances, including any professional activities, interests and relationships that might compromise compliance with the fundamental principles, is a prerequisite to the professional accountant's identification of threats to such compliance. The existence of certain conditions, policies and procedures established by the profession, legislation, regulation, the firm, or the employing organization that can enhance the accountant acting ethically might also help identify threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Paragraph 120.8 A2 includes general examples of such conditions, policies and procedures which are also factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats.

120.6 A2 Threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created by a broad range of facts and circumstances. It is not possible to define every situation that creates threats. In addition, the nature of engagements and work assignments might differ and, consequently, different types of threats might be created.

120.6 A3 Threats to compliance with the fundamental principles fall into one or more of the following categories:

- (a) Self-interest threat – the threat that a financial or other interest will inappropriately influence a professional accountant's judgment or behaviour;
- (b) Self-review threat – the threat that a professional accountant will not appropriately evaluate the results of a previous judgment made; or an activity performed by the accountant, or by another individual within the accountant's firm or employing organization, on which the accountant will rely when forming a judgment as part of performing a current activity;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (c) Advocacy threat – the threat that a professional accountant will promote a client's or employing organization's position to the point that the accountant's objectivity is compromised;
- (d) Familiarity threat – the threat that due to a long or close relationship with a client, or employing organization, a professional accountant will be too sympathetic to their interests or too accepting of their work; and
- (e) Intimidation threat – the threat that a professional accountant will be deterred from acting objectively because of actual or perceived pressures, including attempts to exercise undue influence over the accountant.

120.6 A4 A circumstance might create more than one threat, and a threat might affect compliance with more than one fundamental principle.

Evaluating Threats

R120.7 When the professional accountant identifies a threat to compliance with the fundamental principles, the accountant shall evaluate whether such a threat is at an acceptable level.

Acceptable Level

120.7 A1 An acceptable level is a level at which a professional accountant using the reasonable and informed third party test would likely conclude that the accountant complies with the fundamental principles.

Factors Relevant in Evaluating the Level of Threats

120.8 A1 The consideration of qualitative as well as quantitative factors is relevant in the professional accountant's evaluation of threats, as is the combined effect of multiple threats, if applicable.

120.8 A2 The existence of conditions, policies and procedures described in paragraph 120.6 A1 might also be factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats to compliance with fundamental principles. Examples of such conditions, policies and

CODE OF ETHICS

procedures include:

- Corporate governance requirements.
- Educational, training and experience requirements for the profession.
- Effective complaint systems which enable the professional accountant and the general public to draw attention to unethical behaviour.
- An explicitly stated duty to report breaches of ethics requirements.
- Professional or regulatory monitoring and disciplinary procedures.

Consideration of New Information or Changes in Facts and Circumstances

R120.9 If the professional accountant becomes aware of new information or changes in facts and circumstances that might impact whether a threat has been eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level, the accountant shall re-evaluate and address that threat accordingly.

120.9 A1 Remaining alert throughout the professional activity assists the professional accountant in determining whether new information has emerged or changes in facts and circumstances have occurred that:

- (a) Impact the level of a threat; or
- (b) Affect the accountant's conclusions about whether safeguards applied continue to be appropriate to address identified threats.

120.9 A2 If new information results in the identification of a new threat, the professional accountant is required to evaluate and, as appropriate, address this threat. (Ref: Paras. R120.7 and R120.10).

Addressing Threats

R120. 10 If the professional accountant determines that the identified threats to compliance with the fundamental principles are not at

CODE OF ETHICS

an acceptable level, the accountant shall address the threats by eliminating them or reducing them to an acceptable level. The accountant shall do so by:

- (a) Eliminating the circumstances, including interests or relationships, that are creating the threats;
- (b) Applying safeguards, where available and capable of being applied, to reduce the threats to an acceptable level; or
- (c) Declining or ending the specific professional activity.

Actions to Eliminate Threats

120.10 A1 Depending on the facts and circumstances, a threat might be addressed by eliminating the circumstance creating the threat. However, there are some situations in which threats can only be addressed by declining or ending the specific professional activity. This is because the circumstances that created the threats cannot be eliminated and safeguards are not capable of being applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

Safeguards

120.10 A2 Safeguards are actions, individually or in combination, that the professional accountant takes that effectively reduce threats to compliance with the fundamental principles to an acceptable level.

Consideration of Significant Judgments Made and Overall Conclusions Reached

R120. 11 The professional accountant shall form an overall conclusion about whether the actions that the accountant takes, or intends to take, to address the threats created will eliminate those threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. In forming the overall conclusion, the accountant shall:

- (a) Review any significant judgments made or conclusions reached; and
- (b) Use the reasonable and informed third party test.

CODE OF ETHICS

Considerations for Audits, Reviews and Other Assurance Engagements

Independence

120.12 A1 Professional accountants in public practice are required by *Independence Standards* to be independent when performing audits, reviews, or other assurance engagements. Independence is linked to the fundamental principles of objectivity and integrity. It comprises:

- (a) Independence of mind – the state of mind that permits the expression of a conclusion without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment, thereby allowing an individual to act with integrity, and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism.
- (b) Independence in appearance – the avoidance of facts and circumstances that are so significant that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that a firm's or an audit or assurance team member's integrity, objectivity or professional skepticism has been compromised.

120.12 A2 *Independence Standards* set out requirements and application material on how to apply the conceptual framework to maintain independence when performing audits, reviews or other assurance engagements. Professional accountants and firms are required to comply with these standards in order to be independent when conducting such engagements. The conceptual framework to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles applies in the same way to compliance with independence requirements. The categories of threats to compliance with the fundamental principles described in paragraph 120.6 A3 are also the categories of threats to compliance with independence requirements.

Professional Skepticism

120.13 A1 Under auditing, review and other assurance standards, issued by the AASB, professional accountants in public practice are

CODE OF ETHICS

required to exercise professional skepticism when planning and performing audits, reviews and other assurance engagements. Professional skepticism and the fundamental principles that are described in Section 110 are inter-related concepts.

120.13 A2 In an audit of financial statements, compliance with the fundamental principles, individually and collectively, supports the exercise of professional skepticism, as shown in the following examples:

- Integrity requires the professional accountant to be straightforward and honest. For example, the accountant complies with the principle of integrity by:
 - (a) Being straightforward and honest when raising concerns about a position taken by a client; and
 - (b) Pursuing inquiries about inconsistent information and seeking further audit evidence to address concerns about statements that might be materially false or misleading in order to make informed decisions about the appropriate course of action in the circumstances.

In doing so, the accountant demonstrates the critical assessment of audit evidence that contributes to the exercise of professional skepticism.

- Objectivity requires the professional accountant not to compromise professional or business judgment because of bias, conflict of interest or the undue influence of others. For example, the accountant complies with the principle of objectivity by:
 - (a) Recognizing circumstances or relationships such as familiarity with the client, that might compromise the accountant's professional or business judgment; and
 - (b) Considering the impact of such circumstances and relationships on the accountant's judgment when evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence related to a matter material to the client's financial statements.

CODE OF ETHICS

In doing so, the accountant behaves in a manner that contributes to the exercise of professional skepticism.

- Professional competence and due care requires the professional accountant to have professional knowledge and skill at the level required to ensure the provision of competent professional service, and to act diligently in accordance with applicable standards, laws and regulations. For example, the accountant complies with the principle of professional competence and due care by:
 - (a) Applying knowledge that is relevant to a particular client's industry and business activities in order to properly identify risks of material misstatement;
 - (b) Designing and performing appropriate audit procedures; and
 - (c) Applying relevant knowledge when critically assessing whether audit evidence is sufficient and appropriate in the circumstances.

In doing so, the accountant behaves in a manner that contributes to the exercise of professional skepticism.

PART 2 PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN SERVICE

	Page
Section 200 Applying the Conceptual Framework – Professional Accountants in Service	22
Section 210 Conflicts of Interest.....	28
Section 220 Preparation and Presentation of Information.....	32
Section 230 Acting with Sufficient Expertise	38
Section 240 Financial Interests, Compensation and Incentives Linked to Financial Reporting and Decision Making	40
Section 250 Inducements, Including Gifts and Hospitality	42
Section 260 Responding to Non-Compliance with Laws and Regulations in case of employment with Listed Entities	50
Section 270 Pressure to Breach the Fundamental Principles	63

PART 2
PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN SERVICE

SECTION 200

**APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK –
PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN SERVICE**

Introduction

- 200.1 This Part of the Code sets out requirements and application material for professional accountants in service when applying the conceptual framework set out in Section 120. It does not describe all of the facts and circumstances, including professional activities, interests and relationships that could be encountered by professional accountants in service, which create or might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Therefore, the conceptual framework requires professional accountants in service to be alert for such facts and circumstances.
- 200.2 Investors, creditors, employing organizations and other sectors of the business community, as well as governments and the general public, might rely on the work of professional accountants in service. Professional accountants in service might be solely or jointly responsible for the preparation and reporting of financial and other information, on which both their employing organizations and third parties might rely. They might also be responsible for providing effective financial management and competent advice on a variety of business-related matters.
- 200.3 A professional accountant in service might be an employee, contractor, partner, director (executive or non-executive), owner-manager, or volunteer of an employing organization. The legal form of the relationship of the accountant with the employing organization has no bearing on the ethical responsibilities placed on the accountant.
- 200.4 In this Part, the term “professional accountant” refers to:
- (a) A professional accountant in service; and

- (b) An individual who is a professional accountant in public practice when performing professional activities pursuant to the accountant's relationship with the accountant's firm, whether as a contractor or employee. More information on when Part 2 is applicable to professional accountants in public practice is set out in paragraphs R120.4, R300.5 and 300.5 A1.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R200.5** A professional accountant shall comply with the fundamental principles set out in Section 110 and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.
- 200.5 A1 A professional accountant has a responsibility to further the legitimate objectives of the accountant's employing organization. The Code does not seek to hinder accountants from fulfilling that responsibility, but addresses circumstances in which compliance with the fundamental principles might be compromised.
- 200.5 A2 Professional accountants may promote the position of the employing organization when furthering the legitimate goals and objectives of their employing organization, provided that any statements made are neither false nor misleading. Such actions usually would not create an advocacy threat.
- 200.5 A3 The more senior the position of a professional accountant, the greater will be the ability and opportunity to access information, and to influence policies, decisions made and actions taken by others involved with the employing organization. To the extent that they are able to do so, taking into account their position and seniority in the organization, accountants are expected to encourage and promote an ethics-based culture in the organization. Examples of actions that might be taken include the introduction, implementation and oversight of:
- Ethics education and training programs.
 - Ethics and whistle-blowing policies.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Policies and procedures designed to prevent non-compliance with laws and regulations.

Identifying Threats

200.6 A1 Threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created by a broad range of facts and circumstances. The categories of threats are described in paragraph 120.6 A3. The following are examples of facts and circumstances within each of those categories that might create threats for a professional accountant when undertaking a professional activity:

(a) Self-interest Threats

- A professional accountant holding a financial interest in, or receiving a loan or guarantee from, the employing organization.
- A professional accountant participating in incentive compensation arrangements offered by the employing organization.
- A professional accountant having access to corporate assets for personal use.
- A professional accountant being offered a gift or special treatment from a supplier of the employing organization.

(b) Self-review Threats

- A professional accountant determining the appropriate accounting treatment for a business combination after performing the feasibility study supporting the purchase decision.

(c) Advocacy Threats

- A professional accountant having the opportunity to manipulate information in a prospectus in order to obtain favorable financing.

(d) Familiarity Threats

- A professional accountant being responsible for the financial reporting of the employing organization when an immediate or close family member employed by the

CODE OF ETHICS

organization makes decisions that affect the financial reporting of the organization.

- A professional accountant having a long association with individuals influencing business decisions.

(e) Intimidation Threats

- A professional accountant or immediate or close family member facing the threat of dismissal or replacement over a disagreement about:
 - The application of an accounting principle.
 - The way in which financial information is to be reported.
- An individual attempting to influence the decision-making process of the professional accountant, for example with regard to the awarding of contracts or the application of an accounting principle.

Evaluating Threats

200.7 A1 The conditions, policies and procedures described in paragraphs 120.6 A1 and 120.8 A2 might impact the evaluation of whether a threat to compliance with the fundamental principles is at an acceptable level.

200.7 A2 The professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat is also impacted by the nature and scope of the professional activity.

200.7 A3 The professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat might be impacted by the work environment within the employing organization and its operating environment. For example:

- Leadership that stresses the importance of ethical behaviour and the expectation that employees will act in an ethical manner.
- Policies and procedures to empower and encourage employees to communicate ethics issues that concern them to senior levels of management without fear of retribution.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Policies and procedures to implement and monitor the quality of employee performance.
- Systems of corporate oversight or other oversight structures and strong internal controls.
- Recruitment procedures emphasizing the importance of employing high caliber competent personnel.
- Timely communication of policies and procedures, including any changes to them, to all employees, and appropriate training and education on such policies and procedures.
- Ethics and code of conduct policies.

200.7 A4 Professional accountants might consider obtaining legal advice where they believe that unethical behaviour or actions by others have occurred, or will continue to occur, within the employing organization.

Addressing Threats

200.8 A1 Sections 210 to 270 describe certain threats that might arise during the course of performing professional activities and include examples of actions that might address such threats.

200.8 A2 In extreme situations, if the circumstances that created the threats cannot be eliminated and safeguards are not available or capable of being applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level, it might be appropriate for a professional accountant to resign from the employing organization.

Communicating with Those Charged with Governance

R200.9 When communicating with those charged with governance in accordance with the Code, a professional accountant shall determine the appropriate individual(s) within the employing organization's governance structure with whom to communicate. If the accountant communicates with a subgroup of those charged with governance, the accountant shall determine whether communication with all of those charged with governance is also necessary so that they are adequately informed.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 200.9 A1 In determining with whom to communicate, a professional accountant might consider:
- (a) The nature and importance of the circumstances; and
 - (b) The matter to be communicated.
- 200.9 A2 Examples of a subgroup of those charged with governance include an audit committee or an individual member of those charged with governance.
- R200.10** If a professional accountant communicates with individuals who have management responsibilities as well as governance responsibilities, the accountant shall be satisfied that communication with those individuals adequately informs all of those in a governance role with whom the accountant would otherwise communicate.
- 200.10 A1 In some circumstances, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the employing organization, for example, a small business where a single owner manages the organization and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, if matters are communicated with individual(s) with management responsibilities, and those individual(s) also have governance responsibilities, the professional accountant has satisfied the requirement to communicate with those charged with governance.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 210

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Introduction

210.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.

210.2 A conflict of interest creates threats to compliance with the principle of objectivity and might create threats to compliance with the other fundamental principles. Such threats might be created when:

- (a) A professional accountant undertakes a professional activity related to a particular matter for two or more parties whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict; or
- (b) The interest of a professional accountant with respect to a particular matter and the interests of a party for whom the accountant undertakes a professional activity related to that matter are in conflict.

A party might include an employing organization, a vendor, a customer, a lender, a shareholder, or another party.

210.3 This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework to conflicts of interest.

Requirements and Application Material

General

R210.4 A professional accountant shall not allow a conflict of interest to compromise professional or business judgment.

210.4 A1 Examples of circumstances that might create a conflict of interest include:

- Serving in a management or governance position for two employing organizations and acquiring confidential information from one organization that might be used by

CODE OF ETHICS

the professional accountant to the advantage or disadvantage of the other organization.

- Undertaking a professional activity for each of two parties in a partnership, where both parties are employing the accountant to assist them to dissolve their partnership.
- Preparing financial information for certain members of management of the accountant's employing organization who are seeking to undertake a management buy-out.
- Being responsible for selecting a vendor for the employing organization when an immediate family member of the accountant might benefit financially from the transaction.
- Serving in a governance capacity in an employing organization that is approving certain investments for the company where one of those investments will increase the value of the investment portfolio of the accountant or an immediate family member.

Conflict Identification

R210.5 A professional accountant shall take reasonable steps to identify circumstances that might create a conflict of interest, and therefore a threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. Such steps shall include identifying:

- (a) The nature of the relevant interests and relationships between the parties involved; and
- (b) The activity and its implication for relevant parties.

R210.6 A professional accountant shall remain alert to changes over time in the nature of the activities, interests and relationships that might create a conflict of interest while performing a professional activity.

Threats Created by Conflicts of Interest

210.7 A1 In general, the more direct the connection between the

CODE OF ETHICS

professional activity and the matter on which the parties' interests conflict, the more likely the level of the threat is not at an acceptable level.

- 210.7 A2 An example of an action that might eliminate threats created by conflicts of interest is withdrawing from the decision-making process related to the matter giving rise to the conflict of interest.
- 210.7 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats created by conflicts of interest include:
- Restructuring or segregating certain responsibilities and duties.
 - Obtaining appropriate oversight, for example, acting under the supervision of an executive or non-executive director.

Disclosure and Consent

General

- 210.8 A1 It is generally necessary to:
- (a) Disclose the nature of the conflict of interest and how any threats created were addressed to the relevant parties, including to the appropriate levels within the employing organization affected by a conflict; and
 - (b) Obtain consent from the relevant parties for the professional accountant to undertake the professional activity when safeguards are applied to address the threat.
- 210.8 A2 Consent might be implied by a party's conduct in circumstances where the professional accountant has sufficient evidence to conclude that the parties know the circumstances at the outset and have accepted the conflict of interest if they do not raise an objection to the existence of the conflict.
- 210.8 A3 If such disclosure or consent is not in writing, the professional accountant is encouraged to document:

CODE OF ETHICS

- (a) The nature of the circumstances giving rise to the conflict of interest;
- (b) The safeguards applied to address the threats when applicable; and
- (c) The consent obtained.

Other Considerations

210.9 A1 When addressing a conflict of interest, the professional accountant is encouraged to seek guidance from within the employing organization or from the Institute, legal counsel or another accountant. When making such disclosures or sharing information within the employing organization and seeking guidance of third parties, the principle of confidentiality applies.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 220

PREPARATION AND PRESENTATION OF INFORMATION

Introduction

- 220.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 220.2 Preparing or presenting information might create a self-interest, intimidation or other threats to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 220.3 A1 Professional accountants at all levels in an employing organization are involved in the preparation or presentation of information both within and outside the organization.
- 220.3 A2 Stakeholders to whom, or for whom, such information is prepared or presented, include:
- Management and those charged with governance.
 - Investors and lenders or other creditors.
 - Regulatory bodies.

This information might assist stakeholders in understanding and evaluating aspects of the employing organization's state of affairs and in making decisions concerning the organization. Information can include financial and non-financial information that might be made public or used for internal purposes.

Examples include:

- Operating and performance reports.
- Decision support analyses.
- Budgets and forecasts.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Information provided to the internal and external auditors.
 - Risk analyses.
 - General and special purpose financial statements.
 - Tax returns.
 - Reports filed with regulatory bodies for legal and compliance purposes.
- 220.3 A3 For the purposes of this section, preparing or presenting information includes recording, maintaining and approving information.
- R220.4** When preparing or presenting information, a professional accountant shall:
- (a) Prepare or present the information in accordance with a relevant reporting framework, where applicable;
 - (b) Prepare or present the information in a manner that is intended neither to mislead nor to influence contractual or regulatory outcomes inappropriately;
 - (c) Exercise professional judgment to:
 - (i) Represent the facts accurately and completely in all material respects;
 - (ii) Describe clearly the true nature of business transactions or activities; and
 - (iii) Classify and record information in a timely and proper manner; and
 - (d) Not omit anything with the intention of rendering the information misleading or of influencing contractual or regulatory outcomes inappropriately.
- 220.4 A1 An example of influencing a contractual or regulatory outcome inappropriately is using an unrealistic estimate with the intention of avoiding violation of a contractual requirement such as a debt covenant or of a regulatory requirement such as a capital requirement for a financial institution.

CODE OF ETHICS

Use of Discretion in Preparing or Presenting Information

R220.5 Preparing or presenting information might require the exercise of discretion in making professional judgments. The professional accountant shall not exercise such discretion with the intention of misleading others or influencing contractual or regulatory outcomes inappropriately.

220.5 A1 Examples of ways in which discretion might be misused to achieve inappropriate outcomes include:

- Determining estimates, for example, determining fair value estimates in order to misrepresent profit or loss.
- Selecting or changing an accounting policy or method among two or more alternatives permitted under the applicable financial reporting framework, for example, selecting a policy for accounting for long-term contracts in order to misrepresent profit or loss.
- Determining the timing of transactions, for example, timing the sale of an asset near the end of the fiscal year in order to mislead.
- Determining the structuring of transactions, for example, structuring financing transactions in order to misrepresent assets and liabilities or classification of cash flows.
- Selecting disclosures, for example, omitting or obscuring information relating to financial or operating risk in order to mislead.

R220.6 When performing professional activities, especially those that do not require compliance with a relevant reporting framework, the professional accountant shall exercise professional judgment to identify and consider:

- (a) The purpose for which the information is to be used;
- (b) The context within which it is given; and
- (c) The audience to whom it is addressed.

220.6 A1 For example, when preparing or presenting pro forma reports, budgets or forecasts, the inclusion of relevant estimates,

approximations and assumptions, where appropriate, would enable those who might rely on such information to form their own judgments.

- 220.6 A2 The professional accountant might also consider clarifying the intended audience, context and purpose of the information to be presented.

Relying on the Work of Others

R220.7 A professional accountant who intends to rely on the work of others, either internal or external to the employing organization, shall exercise professional judgment to determine what steps to take, if any, in order to fulfill the responsibilities set out in paragraph R220.4.

- 220.7 A1 Factors to consider in determining whether reliance on others is reasonable include:

- The reputation and expertise of, and resources available to, the other individual or organization.
- Whether the other individual is subject to applicable professional and ethics standards.

Such information might be gained from prior association with, or from consulting others about, the other individual or organization.

Addressing Information that Is or Might be Misleading

R220.8 When the professional accountant knows or has reason to believe that the information with which the accountant is associated is misleading, the accountant shall take appropriate actions to seek to resolve the matter.

- 220.8 A1 Actions that might be appropriate include:

- Discussing concerns that the information is misleading with the professional accountant's superior and/or the appropriate level(s) of management within the accountant's employing organization or those charged with governance, and requesting such individuals to take appropriate action to resolve the matter. Such action might include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- Having the information corrected.
 - If the information has already been disclosed to the intended users, informing them of the correct information.
 - Consulting the policies and procedures of the employing organization (for example, an ethics or whistle-blowing policy) regarding how to address such matters internally.
- 220.8 A2 The professional accountant might determine that the employing organization has not taken appropriate action. If the accountant continues to have reason to believe that the information is misleading, the following further actions might be appropriate provided that the accountant remains alert to the principle of confidentiality:
- Consulting with:
 - The Institute
 - The internal or external auditor of the employing organization.
 - Legal counsel.
 - Determining whether any requirements exist to communicate to:
 - Third parties, including users of the information.
 - Regulatory and oversight authorities.
- R220.9** If after exhausting all feasible options, the professional accountant determines that appropriate action has not been taken and there is reason to believe that the information is still misleading, the accountant shall refuse to be or to remain associated with the information.
- 220.9 A1 In such circumstances, it might be appropriate for a professional accountant to resign from the employing organization.

Documentation

- 220.10 A1 The professional accountant is encouraged to document:
- The facts.

CODE OF ETHICS

- The accounting principles or other relevant professional standards involved.
- The communications and parties with whom matters were discussed.
- The courses of action considered.
- How the accountant attempted to address the matter(s).

Other Considerations

- 220.11 A1 Where threats to compliance with the fundamental principles relating to the preparation or presentation of information arise from a financial interest, including compensation and incentives linked to financial reporting and decision making, the requirements and application material set out in Section 240 apply.
- 220.11 A2 Where the misleading information might involve non-compliance with laws and regulations, the requirements and application material set out in Section 260 apply.
- 220.11 A3 Where threats to compliance with the fundamental principles relating to the preparation or presentation of information arise from pressure, the requirements and application material set out in Section 270 apply.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 230

ACTING WITH SUFFICIENT EXPERTISE

Introduction

- 230.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 230.2 Acting without sufficient expertise creates a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R230.3** A professional accountant shall not intentionally mislead an employing organization as to the level of expertise or experience possessed.
- 230.3 A1 The principle of professional competence and due care requires that a professional accountant only undertake significant tasks for which the accountant has, or can obtain, sufficient training or experience.
- 230.3 A2 A self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care might be created if a professional accountant has:
- Insufficient time for performing or completing the relevant duties.
 - Incomplete, restricted or otherwise inadequate information for performing the duties.
 - Insufficient experience, training and/or education.
 - Inadequate resources for the performance of the duties.
- 230.4 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- The extent to which the professional accountant is working with others.
- The relative seniority of the accountant in the business.
- The level of supervision and review applied to the work.

230.5 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Obtaining assistance or training from someone with the necessary expertise.
- Ensuring that there is adequate time available for performing the relevant duties.

R230.4 If a threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care cannot be addressed, a professional accountant shall determine whether to decline to perform the duties in question. If the accountant determines that declining is appropriate, the accountant shall communicate the reasons.

Other Considerations

230.5 A1 The requirements and application material in Section 270 apply when a professional accountant is pressured to act in a manner that might lead to a breach of the principle of professional competence and due care.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 240

FINANCIAL INTERESTS, COMPENSATION AND INCENTIVES LINKED TO FINANCIAL REPORTING AND DECISION MAKING

Introduction

- 240.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 240.2 Having a financial interest, or knowing of a financial interest held by an immediate or close family member might create a self-interest threat to compliance with the principles of objectivity or confidentiality. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R240.3** A professional accountant shall not manipulate information or use confidential information for personal gain or for the financial gain of others.
- 240.3 A1 Professional accountants might have financial interests or might know of financial interests of immediate or close family members that, in certain circumstances, might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Financial interests include those arising from compensation or incentive arrangements linked to financial reporting and decision making.
- 240.3 A2 Examples of circumstances that might create a self-interest threat include situations in which the professional accountant or an immediate or close family member:
- Has a motive and opportunity to manipulate price-sensitive information in order to gain financially.
 - Holds a direct or indirect financial interest in the employing organization and the value of that financial interest might be directly affected by decisions made by the accountant.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Is eligible for a profit-related bonus and the value of that bonus might be directly affected by decisions made by the accountant.
 - Holds, directly or indirectly, deferred bonus share rights or share options in the employing organization, the value of which might be affected by decisions made by the accountant.
 - Participates in compensation arrangements which provide incentives to achieve targets or to support efforts to maximize the value of the employing organization's shares. An example of such an arrangement might be through participation in incentive plans which are linked to certain performance conditions being met.
- 240.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:
- The significance of the financial interest. What constitutes a significant financial interest will depend on personal circumstances and the materiality of the financial interest to the individual.
 - Policies and procedures for a committee independent of management to determine the level or form of senior management remuneration.
 - In accordance with any internal policies, disclosure to those charged with governance of:
 - All relevant interests.
 - Any plans to exercise entitlements or trade in relevant shares.
 - Internal and external audit procedures that are specific to address issues that give rise to the financial interest.
- 240.3 A4 Threats created by compensation or incentive arrangements might be compounded by explicit or implicit pressure from superiors or colleagues. See Section 270, *Pressure to Breach the Fundamental Principles*.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 250

INDUCEMENTS, INCLUDING GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

Introduction

- 250.2 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 250.3 Offering or accepting inducements might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat to compliance with the fundamental principles, particularly the principles of integrity, objectivity and professional behaviour.
- 250.4 This section sets out requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in relation to the offering and accepting of inducements when undertaking professional activities that does not constitute non-compliance with laws and regulations. This section also requires a professional accountant to comply with relevant laws and regulations when offering or accepting inducements.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 250.5 A1 An inducement is an object, situation, or action that is used as a means to influence another individual's behaviour, but not necessarily with the intent to improperly influence that individual's behaviour. Inducements can range from minor acts of hospitality between business colleagues to acts that result in non-compliance with laws and regulations. An inducement can take many different forms, for example:
- Gifts.
 - Hospitality.
 - Entertainment.
 - Political or charitable donations.
 - Appeals to friendship and loyalty.
 - Employment or other commercial opportunities.

- Preferential treatment, rights or privileges.

Inducements Prohibited by Laws and Regulations

R250.5 The professional accountant shall obtain an understanding of relevant laws and regulations and comply with them when the accountant encounters such circumstances.

Inducements Not Prohibited by Laws and Regulations

250.6 A1 The offering or accepting of inducements that is not prohibited by laws and regulations might still create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.

Inducements with Intent to Improperly Influence Behaviour

R250.7 A professional accountant shall not offer, or encourage others to offer, any inducement that is made, or which the accountant considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude is made, with the intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

R250.8 A professional accountant shall not accept, or encourage others to accept, any inducement that the accountant concludes is made, or considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude is made, with the intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

250.9 A1 An inducement is considered as improperly influencing an individual's behaviour if it causes the individual to act in an unethical manner. Such improper influence can be directed either towards the recipient or towards another individual who has some relationship with the recipient. The fundamental principles are an appropriate frame of reference for a professional accountant in considering what constitutes unethical behaviour on the part of the accountant and, if necessary by analogy, other individuals.

250.9 A2 A breach of the fundamental principle of integrity arises when a professional accountant offers or accepts, or encourages others to offer or accept, an inducement where the intent is to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

CODE OF ETHICS

250.9 A3 The determination of whether there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour requires the exercise of professional judgment. Relevant factors to consider might include:

- The nature, frequency, value and cumulative effect of the inducement.
- Timing of when the inducement is offered relative to any action or decision that it might influence.
- Whether the inducement is a customary or cultural practice in the circumstances, for example, offering a gift on the occasion of a religious holiday or wedding.
- Whether the inducement is an ancillary part of a professional activity, for example, offering or accepting lunch in connection with a business meeting.
- Whether the offer of the inducement is limited to an individual recipient or available to a broader group. The broader group might be internal or external to the employing organization, such as other customers or vendors.
- The roles and positions of the individuals offering or being offered the inducement.
- Whether the professional accountant knows, or has reason to believe, that accepting the inducement would breach the policies and procedures of the counterparty's employing organization.
- The degree of transparency with which the inducement is offered.
- Whether the inducement was required or requested by the recipient.
- The known previous behaviour or reputation of the offeror.

Consideration of Further Actions

250.10 A1 If the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement

CODE OF ETHICS

offered with actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour, threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might still be created even if the requirements in paragraphs R250.7 and R250.8 are met.

250.10 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats include:

- Informing senior management or those charged with governance of the employing organization of the professional accountant or the offeror regarding the offer.
- Amending or terminating the business relationship with the offeror.

Inducements with No Intent to Improperly Influence Behaviour

250.11 A1 The requirements and application material set out in the conceptual framework apply when a professional accountant has concluded there is no actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

250.11 A2 If such an inducement is trivial and inconsequential, any threats created will be at an acceptable level.

250.11 A3 Examples of circumstances where offering or accepting such an inducement might create threats even if the professional accountant has concluded there is no actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour include:

- Self-interest threats
 - A professional accountant is offered part-time employment by a vendor.
- Familiarity threats
 - A professional accountant regularly takes a customer or supplier to sporting events.
- Intimidation threats
 - A professional accountant accepts hospitality,

CODE OF ETHICS

the nature of which could be perceived to be inappropriate were it to be publicly disclosed.

250.11 A4 Relevant factors in evaluating the level of such threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include the same factors set out in paragraph 250.9 A3 for determining intent.

250.11 A5 Examples of actions that might eliminate threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include:

- Declining or not offering the inducement.
- Transferring responsibility for any business-related decision involving the counterparty to another individual who the professional accountant has no reason to believe would be, or would be perceived to be, improperly influenced in making the decision.

250.11 A6 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include:

- Being transparent with senior management or those charged with governance of the employing organization of the professional accountant or of the counterparty about offering or accepting an inducement.
- Registering the inducement in a log maintained by the employing organization of the accountant or the counterparty.
- Having an appropriate reviewer, who is not otherwise involved in undertaking the professional activity, review any work performed or decisions made by the accountant with respect to the individual or organization from which the accountant accepted the inducement.
- Donating the inducement to charity after receipt and appropriately disclosing the donation, for example, to those charged with governance or the individual who offered the inducement.
- Reimbursing the cost of the inducement, such as hospitality, received.

- As soon as possible, returning the inducement, such as a gift, after it was initially accepted.

Immediate or Close Family Members

R250.12 A professional accountant shall remain alert to potential threats to the accountant's compliance with the fundamental principles created by the offering of an inducement:

- (a) By an immediate or close family member of the accountant to a counterparty with whom the accountant has a professional relationship; or
- (b) To an immediate or close family member of the accountant by a counterparty with whom the accountant has a professional relationship.

R250.13 Where the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement being offered to or made by an immediate or close family member and concludes there is intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the accountant or of the counterparty, or considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude such intent exists, the accountant shall advise the immediate or close family member not to offer or accept the inducement.

250.13 A1 The factors set out in paragraph 250.9 A3 are relevant in determining whether there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the professional accountant or of the counterparty. Another factor that is relevant is the nature or closeness of the relationship, between:

- (a) The accountant and the immediate or close family member;
- (b) The immediate or close family member and the counterparty; and
- (c) The accountant and the counterparty.

For example, the offer of employment, outside of the normal recruitment process, to the spouse of the accountant by a counterparty with whom the accountant is negotiating a significant contract might indicate such intent.

CODE OF ETHICS

250.13 A2 The application material in paragraph 250.10 A2 is also relevant in addressing threats that might be created when there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the professional accountant or of the counterparty even if the immediate or close family member has followed the advice given pursuant to paragraph R250.13.

Application of the Conceptual Framework

250.14 A1 Where the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement offered in the circumstances addressed in paragraph R250.12, threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created where:

- (a) The immediate or close family member offers or accepts the inducement contrary to the advice of the accountant pursuant to paragraph R250.13; or
- (b) The accountant does not have reason to believe an actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the accountant or of the counterparty exists.

250.14 A2 The application material in paragraphs 250.11 A1 to 250.11 A6 is relevant for the purposes of identifying, evaluating and addressing such threats. Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats in these circumstances also include the nature or closeness of the relationships set out in paragraph 250.13 A1.

Other Considerations

250.15 A1 If a professional accountant is offered an inducement by the employing organization relating to financial interests, compensation and incentives linked to performance, the requirements and application material set out in Section 240 apply.

250.15 A2 If a professional accountant encounters or is made aware of inducements that might result in non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations by other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization,

CODE OF ETHICS

the requirements and application material set out in Section 260 apply.

- 250.15 A3 If a professional accountant faces pressure to offer or accept inducements that might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles, the requirements and application material set out in Section 270 apply.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 260

RESPONDING TO NON-COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS IN CASE OF EMPLOYMENT WITH LISTED ENTITIES

Introduction

- 260.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 260.2 A self-interest or intimidation threat to compliance with the principles of integrity and professional behaviour is created when a professional accountant becomes aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations.
- 260.3 A professional accountant might encounter or be made aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance in the course of carrying out professional activities. This section guides the accountant in assessing the implications of the matter and the possible courses of action when responding to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with:
- (a) Laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the employing organization's financial statements; and
 - (b) Other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the employing organization's financial statements, but compliance with which might be fundamental to the operating aspects of the employing organization's business, to its ability to continue its business, or to avoid material penalties.

Objectives of the Professional Accountant in Relation to Non-compliance with Laws and Regulations

- 260.4 A distinguishing mark of the accountancy profession is its acceptance of the responsibility to act in the public interest.

CODE OF ETHICS

When responding to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the objectives of the professional accountant are:

- (a) To comply with the principles of integrity and professional behaviour;
- (b) By alerting management or, where appropriate, those charged with governance of the employing organization, to seek to:
 - (i) Enable them to rectify, remediate or mitigate the consequences of the identified or suspected non-compliance; or
 - (ii) Deter the non-compliance where it has not yet occurred; and
- (c) To take such further action as appropriate in the public interest.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 260.5 A1 Non-compliance with laws and regulations (“non-compliance”) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations committed by the following parties:
- (a) The professional accountant’s employing organization;
 - (b) Those charged with governance of the employing organization;
 - (c) Management of the employing organization; or
 - (d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.
- 260.5 A2 Examples of laws and regulations which this section addresses include those that deal with:
- Fraud, corruption and bribery.
 - Money laundering, terrorist financing and proceeds of crime.
 - Securities markets and trading.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Banking and other financial products and services.
- Data protection.
- Tax and pension liabilities and payments.
- Environmental protection.
- Public health and safety.

260.5 A3 Non-compliance might result in fines, litigation or other consequences for the employing organization, potentially materially affecting its financial statements. Importantly, such non-compliance might have wider public interest implications in terms of potentially substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. For the purposes of this section, non-compliance that causes substantial harm is one that results in serious adverse consequences to any of these parties in financial or non-financial terms. Examples include the perpetration of a fraud resulting in significant financial losses to investors, and breaches of environmental laws and regulations endangering the health or safety of employees or the public.

R260.6 When encountering such non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall obtain an understanding of those legal or regulatory provisions, if any, and comply with them, including:

- (a) Any requirement to report the matter to an appropriate authority; and
- (b) Any prohibition on alerting the relevant party.

260.6 A1 A prohibition on alerting the relevant party might arise, for example, pursuant to anti-money laundering legislation.

260.7 A1 This section applies to employees of Listed entities.

260.7 A2 A professional accountant who encounters or is made aware of matters that are clearly inconsequential is not required to comply with this section. Whether a matter is clearly inconsequential is to be judged with respect to its nature and its impact, financial or otherwise, on the employing organization, its stakeholders and the general public.

260.7 A3 This section does not address:

- (a) Personal misconduct unrelated to the business activities of the employing organization; and
- (b) Non-compliance by parties other than those specified in paragraph 260.5 A1.

The professional accountant might nevertheless find the guidance in this section helpful in considering how to respond in these situations.

Responsibilities of the Employing Organization's Management and Those Charged with Governance

260.8 A1 The employing organization's management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, is responsible for ensuring that the employing organization's business activities are conducted in accordance with laws and regulations. Management and those charged with governance are also responsible for identifying and addressing any non-compliance by:

- (a) The employing organization;
- (b) An individual charged with governance of the employing organization;
- (c) A member of management; or
- (d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.

Responsibilities of All Professional Accountants

R260.9 If protocols and procedures exist within the professional accountant's employing organization to address non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall consider them in determining how to respond to such non-compliance.

260.9 A1 Many employing organizations have established protocols and procedures regarding how to raise non-compliance or suspected non-compliance internally. These protocols and procedures include, for example, an ethics policy or internal whistle-blowing

CODE OF ETHICS

mechanism. Such protocols and procedures might allow matters to be reported anonymously through designated channels.

- R260.10** Where a professional accountant becomes aware of a matter to which this section applies, the steps that the accountant takes to comply with this section shall be taken on a timely basis. For the purpose of taking timely steps, the accountant shall have regard to the nature of the matter and the potential harm to the interests of the employing organization, investors, creditors, employees or the general public.

Responsibilities of Senior Professional Accountants in Service

- 260.11 A1 Senior professional accountants in service (“senior professional accountants”) are directors, officers or senior employees able to exert significant influence over, and make decisions regarding, the acquisition, deployment and control of the employing organization’s human, financial, technological, physical and intangible resources. There is a greater expectation for such individuals to take whatever action is appropriate in the public interest to respond to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance than other professional accountants within the employing organization. This is because of senior professional accountants’ roles, positions and spheres of influence within the employing organization.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Matter

- R260.12** If, in the course of carrying out professional activities, a senior professional accountant becomes aware of information concerning non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall obtain an understanding of the matter. This understanding shall include:
- (a) The nature of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance and the circumstances in which it has occurred or might occur;
 - (b) The application of the relevant laws and regulations to the circumstances; and
 - (c) An assessment of the potential consequences to the

CODE OF ETHICS

employing organization, investors, creditors, employees or the wider public.

- 260.12 A1 A senior professional accountant is expected to apply knowledge and expertise, and exercise professional judgment. However, the accountant is not expected to have a level of understanding of laws and regulations greater than that which is required for the accountant's role within the employing organization. Whether an act constitutes non-compliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.
- 260.12 A2 Depending on the nature and significance of the matter, the senior professional accountant might cause, or take appropriate steps to cause, the matter to be investigated internally. The accountant might also consult on a confidential basis with others within the employing organization or Institute, or with legal counsel.

Addressing the Matter

- R260.13** If the senior professional accountant identifies or suspects that non-compliance has occurred or might occur, the accountant shall, subject to paragraph R260.9, discuss the matter with the accountant's immediate superior, if any. If the accountant's immediate superior appears to be involved in the matter, the accountant shall discuss the matter with the next higher level of authority within the employing organization.
- 260.13 A1 The purpose of the discussion is to enable a determination to be made as to how to address the matter.
- R260.14** The senior professional accountant shall also take appropriate steps to:
- (a) Have the matter communicated to those charged with governance;
 - (b) Comply with applicable laws and regulations, including legal or regulatory provisions governing the reporting of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance to an appropriate authority;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (c) Have the consequences of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance rectified, remediated or mitigated;
 - (d) Reduce the risk of re-occurrence; and
 - (e) Seek to deter the commission of the non-compliance if it has not yet occurred.
- 260.14 A1 The purpose of communicating the matter to those charged with governance is to obtain their concurrence regarding appropriate actions to take to respond to the matter and to enable them to fulfill their responsibilities.
- 260.14 A2 Some laws and regulations might stipulate a period within which reports of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance are to be made to an appropriate authority.
- R260.15** In addition to responding to the matter in accordance with the provisions of this section, the senior professional accountant shall determine whether disclosure of the matter to the employing organization's external auditor, if any, is needed.
- 260.15 A1 Such disclosure would be pursuant to the senior professional accountant's duty or legal obligation to provide all information necessary to enable the auditor to perform the audit.

Determining Whether Further Action Is Needed

- R260.16** The senior professional accountant shall assess the appropriateness of the response of the accountant's superiors, if any, and those charged with governance.
- 260.16 A1 Relevant factors to consider in assessing the appropriateness of the response of the senior professional accountant's superiors, if any, and those charged with governance include whether:
- The response is timely.
 - They have taken or authorized appropriate action to seek to rectify, remediate or mitigate the consequences of the non-compliance, or to avert the non-compliance if it has not yet occurred.
 - The matter has been disclosed to an appropriate

CODE OF ETHICS

authority where appropriate and, if so, whether the disclosure appears adequate.

R260.17 In light of the response of the senior professional accountant's superiors, if any, and those charged with governance, the accountant shall determine if further action is needed in the public interest.

260.17 A1 The determination of whether further action is needed, and the nature and extent of it, will depend on various factors, including:

- The legal and regulatory framework.
- The urgency of the situation.
- The pervasiveness of the matter throughout the employing organization.
- Whether the senior professional accountant continues to have confidence in the integrity of the accountant's superiors and those charged with governance.
- Whether the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance is likely to recur.
- Whether there is credible evidence of actual or potential substantial harm to the interests of the employing organization, investors, creditors, employees or the general public.

260.17 A2 Examples of circumstances that might cause the senior professional accountant no longer to have confidence in the integrity of the accountant's superiors and those charged with governance include situations where:

- The accountant suspects or has evidence of their involvement or intended involvement in any non-compliance.
- Contrary to legal or regulatory requirements, they have not reported, or authorized the reporting of, the matter to an appropriate authority within a reasonable period.

R260.18 The senior professional accountant shall exercise professional judgment in determining the need for, and nature and extent of,

CODE OF ETHICS

further action. In making this determination, the accountant shall take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that the accountant has acted appropriately in the public interest.

260.18 A1 Further action that the senior professional accountant might take includes:

- Informing the management of the parent entity of the matter if the employing organization is a member of a group.
- Disclosing the matter to an appropriate authority as specified under respective law
- Resigning from the employing organization.

260.18 A2 Resigning from the employing organization is not a substitute for taking other actions that might be needed to achieve the senior professional accountant's objectives under this section. However, there might be limitations as to the further actions available to the accountant. In such circumstances, resignation might be the only available course of action.

Seeking Advice

260.19 A1 As assessment of the matter might involve complex analysis and judgments, the senior professional accountant might consider:

- Consulting internally.
- Obtaining legal advice to understand the accountant's options and the professional or legal implications of taking any particular course of action.
- Consulting on a confidential basis with the Institute.

Determining Whether to Disclose the Matter to an Appropriate Authority

260.20 A1 Disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority would be precluded if doing so would be contrary to law or regulation. Otherwise, the purpose of making disclosure is to enable an appropriate authority to cause the matter to be investigated and action to be taken in the public interest.

260.20 A2 The determination of whether to make such a disclosure

CODE OF ETHICS

depends in particular on the nature and extent of the actual or potential harm that is or might be caused by the matter to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. For example, the senior professional accountant might determine that disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority is an appropriate course of action if:

- The employing organization is engaged in bribery (for example, of local or foreign government officials for purposes of securing large contracts).
- The employing organization is regulated and the matter is of such significance as to threaten its license to operate.
- The employing organization is listed on a securities exchange and the matter might result in adverse consequences to the fair and orderly market in the employing organization's securities or pose a systemic risk to the financial markets.
- It is likely that the employing organization would sell products that are harmful to public health or safety.
- The employing organization is promoting a scheme to its clients to assist them in evading taxes.

260.20 A3 The determination of whether to make such a disclosure will also depend on external factors such as:

- Whether there is an appropriate authority that is able to receive the information, and cause the matter to be investigated and action to be taken. The appropriate authority will depend upon the nature of the matter. For example, the appropriate authority would be the Institute in case of complaint of professional misconduct against a professional accountant, whether in public practice or in service, Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) in the case of fraudulent financial reporting or an environmental protection agency, e.g. Environment Pollution (Prevention & Control) Authority for National Capital Region of Delhi in the case of a breach of environmental laws and regulations.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Whether there exists robust and credible protection from civil, criminal or professional liability or retaliation afforded by legislation or regulation, such as under whistle-blowing legislation or regulation.
- Whether there are actual or potential threats to the physical safety of the senior professional accountant or other individuals.

R260.21 If the senior professional accountant determines that disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority, if required, is an appropriate course of action in the circumstances, that disclosure is permitted pursuant to paragraph R114.1(d) of the Code. When making such disclosure, the accountant shall act in good faith and exercise caution when making statements and assertions.

Imminent Breach

R260.22 In exceptional circumstances, the senior professional accountant might become aware of actual or intended conduct that the accountant has reason to believe would constitute an imminent breach of a law or regulation that would cause substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. Having first considered whether it would be appropriate to discuss the matter with management or those charged with governance of the employing organization, the accountant shall exercise professional judgment and determine whether to disclose the matter immediately to an appropriate authority in order to prevent or mitigate the consequences of such imminent breach. If disclosure is made, that disclosure is permitted pursuant to paragraph R114.1(d) of the Code.

Documentation

260.23 A1 In relation to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance that falls within the scope of this section, the senior professional accountant is encouraged to have the following matters documented:

- The matter.
- The results of discussions with the accountant's

CODE OF ETHICS

superiors, if any, and those charged with governance and other parties.

- How the accountant's superiors, if any, and those charged with governance have responded to the matter.
- The courses of action the accountant considered, the judgments made and the decisions that were taken.
- How the accountant is satisfied that the accountant has fulfilled the responsibility set out in paragraph R260.17.

Responsibilities of Professional Accountants Other than Senior Professional Accountants

R260.24 If, in the course of carrying out professional activities, a professional accountant becomes aware of information concerning non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall seek to obtain an understanding of the matter. This understanding shall include the nature of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance and the circumstances in which it has occurred or might occur.

260.24 A1 The professional accountant is expected to apply knowledge and expertise, and exercise professional judgment. However, the accountant is not expected to have a level of understanding of laws and regulations greater than that which is required for the accountant's role within the employing organization. Whether an act constitutes non-compliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.

260.24 A2 Depending on the nature and significance of the matter, the professional accountant might consult on a confidential basis with others within the employing organization or the Institute, or with legal counsel.

R260.25 If the professional accountant identifies or suspects that non-compliance has occurred or might occur, the accountant shall, subject to paragraph R260.9, inform an immediate superior to enable the superior to take appropriate action. If the accountant's immediate superior appears to be involved in the

CODE OF ETHICS

matter, the accountant shall inform the next higher level of authority within the employing organization.

R260.26 In exceptional circumstances, the professional accountant may determine that disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority is an appropriate course of action. If the accountant does so pursuant to paragraphs 260.20 A2 and A3, that disclosure is permitted pursuant to paragraph R114.1(d) of the Code. When making such disclosure, the accountant shall act in good faith and exercise caution when making statements and assertions.

Documentation

260.27 A1 In relation to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance that falls within the scope of this section, the professional accountant is encouraged to have the following matters documented:

- The matter.
- The results of discussions with the accountant's superior, management and, where applicable, those charged with governance and other parties.
- How the accountant's superior has responded to the matter.
- The courses of action the accountant considered, the judgments made and the decisions that were taken.

SECTION 270

PRESSURE TO BREACH THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

Introduction

- 270.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 270.2 Pressure exerted on, or by, a professional accountant might create an intimidation or other threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R270.3** A professional accountant shall not:
- (a) Allow pressure from others to result in a breach of compliance with the fundamental principles; or
 - (b) Place pressure on others that the accountant knows, or has reason to believe, would result in the other individuals breaching the fundamental principles.
- 270.3 A1 A professional accountant might face pressure that creates threats to compliance with the fundamental principles, for example an intimidation threat, when undertaking a professional activity. Pressure might be explicit or implicit and might come from:
- Within the employing organization, for example, from a colleague or superior.
 - An external individual or organization such as a vendor, customer or lender.
 - Internal or external targets and expectations.
- 270.3 A2 Examples of pressure that might result in threats to compliance with the fundamental principles include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- Pressure related to conflicts of interest:
 - Pressure from a family member bidding to act as a vendor to the professional accountant's employing organization to select the family member over another prospective vendor.

See also Section 210, *Conflicts of Interest*.

- Pressure to influence preparation or presentation of information:
 - Pressure to report misleading financial results to meet investor, analyst or lender expectations.
 - Pressure from elected officials on public sector accountants to misrepresent programs or projects to voters.
 - Pressure from colleagues to misstate income, expenditure or rates of return to bias decision-making on capital projects and acquisitions.
 - Pressure from superiors to approve or process expenditures that are not legitimate business expenses.
 - Pressure to suppress internal audit reports containing adverse findings. See also Section 220, *Preparation and Presentation of Information*.
- Pressure to act without sufficient expertise or due care:
 - Pressure from superiors to inappropriately reduce the extent of work performed.
 - Pressure from superiors to perform a task without sufficient skills or training or within unrealistic deadlines.

See also Section 230, *Acting with Sufficient Expertise*.

- Pressure related to financial interests:
 - Pressure from superiors, colleagues or others, for example, those who might benefit from

CODE OF ETHICS

participation in compensation or incentive arrangements to manipulate performance indicators.

See also Section 240, *Financial Interests, Compensation and Incentives Linked to Financial Reporting and Decision Making*.

- Pressure related to inducements:
 - Pressure from others, either internal or external to the employing organization, to offer inducements to influence inappropriately the judgment or decision making process of an individual or organization.
 - Pressure from colleagues to accept a bribe or other inducement, for example to accept inappropriate gifts or entertainment from potential vendors in a bidding process.

See also Section 250, *Inducements, Including Gifts and Hospitality*.

- Pressure related to non-compliance with laws and regulations:
 - Pressure to structure a transaction to evade tax.

See also Section 260, *Responding to Non-compliance with Laws and Regulations*.

270.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats created by pressure include:

- The intent of the individual who is exerting the pressure and the nature and extent of the pressure.
- The application of laws, regulations, and professional standards to the circumstances.
- The culture and leadership of the employing organization including the extent to which they reflect or emphasize the importance of ethical behaviour and the expectation that employees will act ethically. For example, a corporate culture that tolerates unethical behaviour might increase the likelihood that the pressure would

CODE OF ETHICS

result in a threat to compliance with the fundamental principles.

- Policies and procedures, if any, that the employing organization has established, such as ethics or human resources policies that address pressure.

270.3 A4 Discussing the circumstances creating the pressure and consulting with others about those circumstances might assist the professional accountant to evaluate the level of the threat. Such discussion and consultation, which requires being alert to the principle of confidentiality, might include:

- Discussing the matter with the individual who is exerting the pressure to seek to resolve it.
- Discussing the matter with the accountant's superior, if the superior is not the individual exerting the pressure.
- Escalating the matter within the employing organization, including when appropriate, explaining any consequential risks to the organization, for example with:
 - Higher levels of management.
 - Internal or external auditors.
 - Those charged with governance.
- Disclosing the matter in line with the employing organization's policies, including ethics and whistleblowing policies, using any established mechanism, such as a confidential ethics hotline.
- Consulting with:
 - A colleague, superior, human resources personnel, or another professional accountant;
 - Institute or industry associations; or
 - Legal counsel.

270.3 A5 An example of an action that might eliminate threats created by pressure is the professional accountant's request for a restructure of, or segregation of, certain responsibilities and

CODE OF ETHICS

duties so that the accountant is no longer involved with the individual or entity exerting the pressure.

Documentation

270.4 A1 The professional accountant is encouraged to document:

- The facts.
- The communications and parties with whom these matters were discussed.
- The courses of action considered.
- How the matter was addressed.

PART 3 – PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE

	Page
Section 300 Applying the Conceptual Framework – Professional Accountants in Public Practice	69
Section 310 Conflicts of Interest	78
Section 320 Professional Appointments	86
Section 321 Second Opinions.....	93
Section 330 Fees and Other Types of Remuneration	95
Section 340 Inducements, Including Gifts and Hospitality.....	100
Section 350 Custody of Client Assets	108
Section 360 Responding to Non-Compliance with Laws and Regulations during the course of Audit Engagements of Listed Entities	110

PART 3
PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE

SECTION 300

**APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK –
PROFESSIONAL ACCOUNTANTS IN PUBLIC PRACTICE**

Introduction

- 300.1 This Part of the Code sets out requirements and application material for professional accountants in public practice when applying the conceptual framework set out in Section 120. It does not describe all of the facts and circumstances, including professional activities, interests and relationships, that could be encountered by professional accountants in public practice, which create or might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles. Therefore, the conceptual framework requires professional accountants in public practice to be alert for such facts and circumstances.
- 300.2 The requirements and application material that apply to professional accountants in public practice are set out in:
- Part 3 – *Professional Accountants in Public Practice*, Sections 300 to 399, which applies to all professional accountants in public practice, whether they provide assurance services or not.
 - *Independence Standards* as follows:
 - Part 4A – *Independence for Audit and Review Engagements*, Sections 400 to 899, which applies to professional accountants in public practice when performing audit and review engagements.
 - Part 4B – *Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements*, Sections 900 to 999, which applies to professional accountants in public

CODE OF ETHICS

practice when performing assurance engagements other than audit or review engagements.

300.3 In this Part, the term “professional accountant” refers to individual professional accountants in public practice and their firms.

Requirements and Application Material

General

R300.4 A professional accountant shall comply with the fundamental principles set out in Section 110 and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.

R300.5 When dealing with an ethics issue, the professional accountant shall consider the context in which the issue has arisen or might arise. Where an individual who is a professional accountant in public practice is performing professional activities pursuant to the accountant’s relationship with the firm, whether as a contractor or employee, the individual shall comply with the provisions in Part 2 that apply to these circumstances.

300.5 A1 Examples of situations in which the provisions in Part 2 apply to a professional accountant in public practice include:

- Facing a conflict of interest when being responsible for selecting a vendor for the firm when an immediate family member of the accountant might benefit financially from the contract. The requirements and application material set out in Section 210 apply in these circumstances.
- Preparing or presenting financial information for the accountant’s client or firm. The requirements and application material set out in Section 220 apply in these circumstances.
- Being offered an inducement such as being regularly offered complimentary tickets to attend sporting events by a supplier of the firm. The requirements and

CODE OF ETHICS

application material set out in Section 250 apply in these circumstances.

- Facing pressure from an engagement partner to report chargeable hours inaccurately for a client engagement. The requirements and application material set out in Section 270 apply in these circumstances.

Identifying Threats

300.6 A1 Threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created by a broad range of facts and circumstances. The categories of threats are described in paragraph 120.6 A3. The following are examples of facts and circumstances within each of those categories of threats that might create threats for a professional accountant when undertaking a professional service:

(a) Self-interest Threats

- A professional accountant having a direct financial interest in a client.
- A professional accountant quoting a low fee to obtain a new engagement and the fee is so low that it might be difficult to perform the professional service in accordance with applicable technical and professional standards for that price.
- A professional accountant having a close business relationship with a client.
- A professional accountant having access to confidential information that might be used for personal gain.
- A professional accountant discovering a significant error when evaluating the results of a previous professional service performed by a member of the accountant's firm.

(b) Self-review Threats

- A professional accountant issuing an assurance report on the effectiveness of the operation of financial systems after implementing the systems.

CODE OF ETHICS

- A professional accountant having prepared the original data used to generate records that are the subject matter of the assurance engagement.
- (c) Advocacy Threats
- A professional accountant promoting the interests of, or shares in, a client.
 - A professional accountant acting as an advocate on behalf of a client in litigation or disputes with third parties.
 - A professional accountant lobbying in favor of legislation on behalf of a client.
- (d) Familiarity Threats
- A professional accountant having a close or immediate family member who is a director or officer of the client.
 - A director or officer of the client, or an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement, having recently served as the engagement partner.
 - An audit team member having a long association with the audit client.
- (e) Intimidation Threats
- A professional accountant being threatened with dismissal from a client engagement or the firm because of a disagreement about a professional matter.
 - A professional accountant feeling pressured to agree with the judgment of a client because the client has more expertise on the matter in question.
 - A professional accountant being informed that a planned promotion will not occur unless the accountant agrees with an inappropriate accounting treatment.
 - A professional accountant having accepted a significant gift from a client and being threatened that acceptance of this gift will be made public.

Evaluating Threats

- 300.7 A1 The conditions, policies and procedures described in paragraph 120.6 A1 and 120.8 A2 might impact the evaluation of whether a threat to compliance with the fundamental principles is at an acceptable level. Such conditions, policies and procedures might relate to:
- (a) The client and its operating environment; and
 - (b) The firm and its operating environment.
- 300.7 A2 The professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat is also impacted by the nature and scope of the professional service.

The Client and its Operating Environment

- 300.7 A3 The professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat might be impacted by whether the client is:
- (a) An audit client and whether the audit client is a public interest entity;
 - (b) An assurance client that is not an audit client; or
 - (c) A non-assurance client.

For example, providing a non-assurance service to an audit client that is a public interest entity might be perceived to result in a higher level of threat to compliance with the principle of objectivity with respect to the audit.

- 300.7 A4 The corporate governance structure, including the leadership of a client might promote compliance with the fundamental principles. Accordingly, a professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat might also be impacted by a client's operating environment. For example:
- The client requires appropriate individuals other than management to ratify or approve the appointment of a firm to perform an engagement.
 - The client has competent employees with experience and seniority to make managerial decisions.
 - The client has implemented internal procedures that

CODE OF ETHICS

facilitate objective choices in tendering non-assurance engagements.

- The client has a corporate governance structure that provides appropriate oversight and communications regarding the firm's services.

The Firm and its Operating Environment

300.7 A5 A professional accountant's evaluation of the level of a threat might be impacted by the work environment within the accountant's firm and its operating environment. For example:

- Leadership of the firm that promotes compliance with the fundamental principles and establishes the expectation that assurance team members will act in the public interest.
- Policies or procedures for establishing and monitoring compliance with the fundamental principles by all personnel.
- Compensation, performance appraisal and disciplinary policies and procedures that promote compliance with the fundamental principles.
- Management of the reliance on revenue received from a single client.
- The engagement partner having authority within the firm for decisions concerning compliance with the fundamental principles, including decisions about accepting or providing services to a client.
- Educational, training and experience requirements.
- Processes to facilitate and address internal and external concerns or complaints.

Consideration of New Information or Changes in Facts and Circumstances

300.7 A6 New information or changes in facts and circumstances might:

- (a) Impact the level of a threat; or
- (b) Affect the professional accountant's conclusions about

CODE OF ETHICS

whether safeguards applied continue to address identified threats as intended.

In these situations, actions that were already implemented as safeguards might no longer be effective in addressing threats. Accordingly, the application of the conceptual framework requires that the professional accountant re-evaluate and address the threats accordingly. (Ref: Paras. R120.9 and R120.10).

- 300.7 A7 Examples of new information or changes in facts and circumstances that might impact the level of a threat include:
- When the scope of a professional service is expanded.
 - When the client becomes a listed entity or acquires another business unit.
 - When the firm merges with another firm.
 - When the professional accountant is jointly engaged by two clients and a dispute emerges between the two clients.
 - When there is a change in the professional accountant's personal or immediate family relationships.

Addressing Threats

- 300.8 A1 Paragraphs R120.10 to 120.10 A2 set out requirements and application material for addressing threats that are not at an acceptable level.

Examples of Safeguards

- 300.8 A2 Safeguards vary depending on the facts and circumstances. Examples of actions that in certain circumstances might be safeguards to address threats include:
- Assigning additional time and qualified personnel to required tasks when an engagement has been accepted might address a self-interest threat.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer who was not a member of the team review the work performed or advise as necessary might address a self-review threat.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Using different partners and engagement teams with separate reporting lines for the provision of non-assurance services to an assurance client might address self-review, advocacy or familiarity threats.
- Involving another firm to perform or re-perform part of the engagement might address self-interest, self-review, advocacy, familiarity or intimidation threats.
- Separating teams when dealing with matters of a confidential nature might address a self-interest threat.

300.8 A3 The remaining sections of Part 3 and *Independence Standards* describe certain threats that might arise during the course of performing professional services and include examples of actions that might address threats.

Appropriate Reviewer

300.8 A4 An appropriate reviewer is a professional with the necessary knowledge, skills, experience and authority to review, in an objective manner, the relevant work performed or service provided. Such an individual might be a professional accountant.

Communicating with Those Charged with Governance

R300.9 When communicating with those charged with governance in accordance with the Code, a professional accountant shall determine the appropriate individual(s) within the entity's governance structure with whom to communicate. If the accountant communicates with a subgroup of those charged with governance, the accountant shall determine whether communication with all of those charged with governance is also necessary so that they are adequately informed.

300.9 A1 In determining with whom to communicate, a professional accountant might consider:

- (a) The nature and importance of the circumstances; and
- (b) The matter to be communicated.

300.9 A2 Examples of a subgroup of those charged with governance include an audit committee or an individual member of those charged with governance.

CODE OF ETHICS

- R300.10** If a professional accountant communicates with individuals who have management responsibilities as well as governance responsibilities, the accountant shall be satisfied that communication with those individuals adequately informs all of those in a governance role with whom the accountant would otherwise communicate.
- 300.10 A1 In some circumstances, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, for example, a small business where a single owner manages the entity and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, if matters are communicated to individual(s) with management responsibilities, and those individual(s) also have governance responsibilities, the professional accountant has satisfied the requirement to communicate with those charged with governance.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 310

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Introduction

- 310.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 310.2 A conflict of interest creates threats to compliance with the principle of objectivity and might create threats to compliance with the other fundamental principles. Such threats might be created when:
- (a) A professional accountant provides a professional service related to a particular matter for two or more clients whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict; or
 - (b) The interests of a professional accountant with respect to a particular matter and the interests of the client for whom the accountant provides a professional service related to that matter are in conflict.
- 310.3 This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework to conflicts of interest. When a professional accountant provides an audit, review or other assurance service, independence is also required in accordance with *Independence Standards*.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R310.4** A professional accountant shall not allow a conflict of interest to compromise professional or business judgment.
- 310.4 A1 Examples of circumstances that might create a conflict of interest include:
- Providing a transaction advisory service to a client seeking to acquire an audit client, where the firm has

CODE OF ETHICS

obtained confidential information during the course of the audit that might be relevant to the transaction.

- Providing advice to two clients at the same time where the clients are competing to acquire the same company and the advice might be relevant to the parties' competitive positions.
- Providing services to a seller and a buyer in relation to the same transaction.
- Preparing valuations of assets for two parties who are in an adversarial position with respect to the assets.
- Representing two clients in the same matter who are in a legal dispute with each other, such as during divorce proceedings, or the dissolution of a partnership.
- In relation to a license agreement, providing an assurance report for a licensor on the royalties due while advising the licensee on the amounts payable.
- Advising a client to invest in a business in which, for example, the spouse of the professional accountant has a financial interest.
- Providing strategic advice to a client on its competitive position while having a joint venture or similar interest with a major competitor of the client.
- Advising a client on acquiring a business which the firm is also interested in acquiring.

Conflict Identification

General

R310.5 Before accepting a new client relationship, engagement, or business relationship, a professional accountant shall take reasonable steps to identify circumstances that might create a conflict of interest, and therefore a threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. Such steps shall include identifying:

- (a) The nature of the relevant interests and relationships between the parties involved; and

CODE OF ETHICS

(b) The service and its implication for relevant parties.

310.5 A1 An effective conflict identification process assists a professional accountant when taking reasonable steps to identify interests and relationships that might create an actual or potential conflict of interest, both before determining whether to accept an engagement and throughout the engagement. Such a process includes considering matters identified by external parties, for example clients or potential clients. The earlier an actual or potential conflict of interest is identified, the greater the likelihood of the accountant being able to address threats created by the conflict of interest.

310.5 A2 An effective process to identify actual or potential conflicts of interest will take into account factors such as:

- The nature of the professional services provided.
- The size of the firm.
- The size and nature of the client base.
- The structure of the firm, for example, the number and geographic location of offices.

310.5 A3 More information on client acceptance is set out in Section 320, *Professional Appointments*.

Changes in Circumstances

R310.6 A professional accountant shall remain alert to changes over time in the nature of services, interests and relationships that might create a conflict of interest while performing an engagement.

310.6 A1 The nature of services, interests and relationships might change during the engagement. This is particularly true when a professional accountant is asked to conduct an engagement in a situation that might become adversarial, even though the parties who engage the accountant initially might not be involved in a dispute.

Network Firms

R310.7 If the firm is a member of a network, a professional accountant

CODE OF ETHICS

shall consider conflicts of interest that the accountant has reason to believe might exist or arise due to interests and relationships of a network firm.

310.7 A1 Factors to consider when identifying interests and relationships involving a network firm include:

- The nature of the professional services provided.
- The clients served by the network.
- The geographic locations of all relevant parties.

Threats Created by Conflicts of Interest

310.8 A1 In general, the more direct the connection between the professional service and the matter on which the parties' interests conflict, the more likely the level of the threat is not at an acceptable level.

310.8 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a threat created by a conflict of interest include measures that prevent unauthorized disclosure of confidential information when performing professional services related to a particular matter for two or more clients whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict. These measures include:

- The existence of separate practice areas for specialty functions within the firm, which might act as a barrier to the passing of confidential client information between practice areas.
- Policies and procedures to limit access to client files.
- Confidentiality agreements signed by personnel and partners of the firm.
- Separation of confidential information physically and electronically.
- Specific and dedicated training and communication.

310.8 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats created by a conflict of interest include:

- Having separate engagement teams who are provided

CODE OF ETHICS

with clear policies and procedures on maintaining confidentiality.

- Having an appropriate reviewer, who is not involved in providing the service or otherwise affected by the conflict, review the work performed to assess whether the key judgments and conclusions are appropriate.

Disclosure and Consent

General

R310.9 A professional accountant shall exercise professional judgment to determine whether the nature and significance of a conflict of interest are such that specific disclosure and explicit consent are necessary when addressing the threat created by the conflict of interest.

310.9 A1 Factors to consider when determining whether specific disclosure and explicit consent are necessary include:

- The circumstances creating the conflict of interest.
- The parties that might be affected.
- The nature of the issues that might arise.
- The potential for the particular matter to develop in an unexpected manner.

310.9 A2 Disclosure and consent might take different forms, for example:

- General disclosure to clients of circumstances where, as is common commercial practice, the professional accountant does not provide professional services exclusively to any one client (for example, in a particular professional service and market sector). This enables the client to provide general consent accordingly. For example, an accountant might make general disclosure in the standard terms and conditions for the engagement.
- Specific disclosure to affected clients of the circumstances of the particular conflict in sufficient detail

CODE OF ETHICS

to enable the client to make an informed decision about the matter and to provide explicit consent accordingly. Such disclosure might include a detailed presentation of the circumstances and a comprehensive explanation of any planned safeguards and the risks involved.

- Consent might be implied by clients' conduct in circumstances where the professional accountant has sufficient evidence to conclude that clients know the circumstances at the outset and have accepted the conflict of interest if they do not raise an objection to the existence of the conflict.

310.9 A3 It is generally necessary:

- (a) To disclose the nature of the conflict of interest and how any threats created were addressed to clients affected by a conflict of interest; and
- (b) To obtain consent of the affected clients to perform the professional services when safeguards are applied to address the threat.

310.9 A4 If such disclosure or consent is not in writing, the professional accountant is encouraged to document:

- (a) The nature of the circumstances giving rise to the conflict of interest;
- (b) The safeguards applied to address the threats when applicable; and
- (c) The consent obtained.

When Explicit Consent is Refused

R310.10 If a professional accountant has determined that explicit consent is necessary in accordance with paragraph R310.9 and the client has refused to provide consent, the accountant shall either:

- (a) End or decline to perform professional services that would result in the conflict of interest; or
- (b) End relevant relationships or dispose of relevant

CODE OF ETHICS

interests to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

Confidentiality

General

R310.11 A professional accountant shall remain alert to the principle of confidentiality, including when making disclosures or sharing information within the firm or network and seeking guidance from third parties.

310.11 A1 Subsection 114 sets out requirements and application material relevant to situations that might create a threat to compliance with the principle of confidentiality.

When Disclosure to Obtain Consent would Breach Confidentiality

R310.12 When making specific disclosure for the purpose of obtaining explicit consent would result in a breach of confidentiality, and such consent cannot therefore be obtained, the firm shall only accept or continue an engagement if:

- (a) The firm does not act in an advocacy role for one client in an adversarial position against another client in the same matter;
- (b) Specific measures are in place to prevent disclosure of confidential information between the engagement teams serving the two clients; and
- (c) The firm is satisfied that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that it is appropriate for the firm to accept or continue the engagement because a restriction on the firm's ability to provide the professional service would produce a disproportionate adverse outcome for the clients or other relevant third parties.

310.12 A1 A breach of confidentiality might arise, for example, when seeking consent to perform:

- A transaction-related service for a client in a hostile takeover of another client of the firm.

CODE OF ETHICS

- A forensic investigation for a client regarding a suspected fraud, where the firm has confidential information from its work for another client who might be involved in the fraud.

Documentation

R310.13 In the circumstances set out in paragraph R310.12, the professional accountant shall document:

- (a) The nature of the circumstances, including the role that the accountant is to undertake;
- (b) The specific measures in place to prevent disclosure of information between the engagement teams serving the two clients; and
- (c) Why it is appropriate to accept or continue the engagement.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 320

PROFESSIONAL APPOINTMENTS

Introduction

- 320.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 320.2 Acceptance of a new client relationship or changes in an existing engagement might create a threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Client and Engagement Acceptance

General

- 320.3 A1 Threats to compliance with the principles of integrity or professional behaviour might be created, for example, from questionable issues associated with the client (its owners, management or activities). Issues that, if known, might create such a threat include client involvement in illegal activities, dishonesty, questionable financial reporting practices or other unethical behaviour.
- 320.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:
- Knowledge and understanding of the client, its owners, management and those charged with governance and business activities.
 - The client's commitment to address the questionable issues, for example, through improving corporate governance practices or internal controls.
- 320.3 A3 A self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care is created if the engagement team does not possess, or cannot acquire, the competencies to perform the professional services.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 320.3 A4 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:
- An appropriate understanding of:
 - The nature of the client's business;
 - The complexity of its operations;
 - The requirements of the engagement; and
 - The purpose, nature and scope of the work to be performed.
 - Knowledge of relevant industries or subject matter.
 - Experience with relevant regulatory or reporting requirements.
 - The existence of quality control policies and procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance that engagements are accepted only when they can be performed competently.
- 320.3 A5 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address a self-interest threat include:
- Assigning sufficient engagement personnel with the necessary competencies.
 - Agreeing on a realistic time frame for the performance of the engagement.
 - Using experts where necessary.
- R320.3 A6** Professional accountants while accepting engagement of attest functions are required to comply with the "Know Your client" (KYC) Norms of the Institute. The Announcement issued in this regard is reproduced below:-
- 1. Where Client is an individual /proprietor**
- A. General Information**
- ✓ *Name of the Individual*
 - ✓ *PAN No. or Aadhar Card No. of the Individual*
 - ✓ *Business Description*

CODE OF ETHICS

- ✓ *Copy of last Audited Financial Statement*

B. Engagement Information

- ✓ *Type of Engagement*

2. Where Client is a Corporate Entity

A. General Information

- ✓ *Name and Address of the Entity*
- ✓ *Business Description*
- ✓ *Name of the Parent Company in case of Subsidiary*
- ✓ *Copy of last Audited Financial Statement*

B. Engagement Information

- ✓ *Type of Engagement*

C. Regulatory Information

- ✓ *Company PAN No.*
- ✓ *Company Identification No.*
- ✓ *Directors' Names & Addresses*
- ✓ *Directors' Identification No.*

3. Where Client is a Non- Corporate Entity

A. General Information

- ✓ *Name and Address of the Entity*
- ✓ *Copy of PAN No.*
- ✓ *Business Description*
- ✓ *Partner's Names & Addresses (with their PAN/Aadhar Card/DIN No.)*
- ✓ *Copy of last Audited Financial Statement*

B. Engagement Information

- ✓ *Type of Engagement*

Explanation: "Attest Functions" for this purpose will include services pertaining to Audit, Review, Agreed upon Procedures and Compilation of Financial Statements.

Changes in a Professional Appointment

General

- R320.4** Subject to compliance with the provisions of Clause (8) of Part-I of First Schedule to The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, and Council directions thereunder, a professional accountant, shall determine whether there are any reasons for not accepting an engagement when the accountant:
- (a) Is asked by a potential client to replace another accountant;
 - (b) Considers tendering for an engagement held by another accountant subject to compliance with council guidelines dated 7th April, 2016 issued in this regard, as amended from time to time; or
 - (c) Considers undertaking work that is complementary or additional to that of another accountant.
- 320.4 A1 There might be reasons for not accepting an engagement. One such reason might be if a threat created by the facts and circumstances cannot be addressed by applying safeguards. For example, there might be a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care if a professional accountant accepts the engagement before knowing all the relevant facts.
- 320.4 A2 If a professional accountant is asked to undertake work that is complementary or additional to the work of an existing or predecessor accountant, a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care might be created, for example, as a result of incomplete information.
- 320.4 A3 A factor that is relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat is whether tenders state that, before accepting the engagement, contact with the existing or predecessor accountant will be requested. This contact gives the proposed accountant the opportunity to inquire whether there are any reasons why the engagement should not be accepted.

CODE OF ETHICS

320.4 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Asking the existing or predecessor accountant to provide any known information of which, in the existing or predecessor accountant's opinion, the proposed accountant needs to be aware before deciding whether to accept the engagement. For example, inquiry might reveal previously undisclosed pertinent facts and might indicate disagreements with the existing or predecessor accountant that might influence the decision to accept the appointment.
- Obtaining information from other sources such as through inquiries of third parties or background investigations regarding senior management or those charged with governance of the client.

Communicating with the Existing or Predecessor Accountant (except in case of Audit, Review, Report or any other assignment, as may be prescribed by ICAI from time to time and governed with the provisions of Clause (8) of Part-I of First Schedule to The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, and Council directions thereunder)

320.5 A1 A proposed accountant will usually need the client's permission, preferably in writing, to initiate discussions with the existing or predecessor accountant.

R320.6 If unable to communicate with the existing or predecessor accountant, the proposed accountant shall take other reasonable steps to obtain information about any possible threats.

Communicating with the Proposed Accountant

R320.7 When an existing or predecessor accountant is asked to respond to a communication from a proposed accountant, the existing or predecessor accountant shall:

- (a) Comply with relevant laws and regulations governing the request; and
- (b) Provide any information honestly and unambiguously.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 320.7 A1 An existing or predecessor accountant is bound by confidentiality. Whether the existing or predecessor accountant is permitted or required to discuss the affairs of a client with a proposed accountant will depend on the nature of the engagement and:
- (a) Whether the existing or predecessor accountant has permission from the client for the discussion; and
 - (b) The legal and ethics requirements relating to such communications and disclosure,
- 320.7 A2 Circumstances where a professional accountant is or might be required to disclose confidential information, or when disclosure might be appropriate, are set out in paragraph 114.1 A1 of the Code.

Changes in Audit or Review Appointments

R320.8 Subject to provisions of Clause (8) of Part I of First Schedule of the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, and Council directions thereunder, in the case of an audit or review of financial statements, a professional accountant shall request the existing or predecessor accountant to provide known information regarding any facts or other information of which, in the existing or predecessor accountant's opinion, the proposed accountant needs to be aware before deciding whether to accept the engagement.

The existing or predecessor accountant shall provide the information honestly and unambiguously.

Client and Engagement Continuance

- R320.9** For a recurring client engagement, a professional accountant shall periodically review whether to continue with the engagement.
- 320.9 A1 Potential threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created after acceptance which, had they been known earlier, would have caused the professional accountant to decline the engagement. For example, a self-interest threat to

CODE OF ETHICS

compliance with the principle of integrity might be created by improper earnings management or balance sheet valuations.

Using the Work of an Expert

R320.10 When a professional accountant intends to use the work of an expert, the accountant shall determine whether the use is warranted.

320.10 A1 Factors to consider when a professional accountant intends to use the work of an expert include the reputation and expertise of the expert, the resources available to the expert, and the professional and ethics standards applicable to the expert. This information might be gained from prior association with the expert or from consulting others.

SECTION 321 SECOND OPINIONS

Introduction

- 321.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 321.2 Providing a second opinion to an entity that is not an existing client might create a self-interest or other threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 321.3 A1 A professional accountant might be asked to provide a second opinion on the application of accounting, auditing, reporting or other standards or principles to (a) specific circumstances, or (b) transactions by or on behalf of a company or an entity that is not an existing client. A threat, for example, a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care, might be created if the second opinion is not based on the same facts that the existing or predecessor accountant had, or is based on inadequate evidence.
- 321.3 A2 A factor that is relevant in evaluating the level of such a self-interest threat is the circumstances of the request and all the other available facts and assumptions relevant to the expression of a professional judgment.
- 321.3 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:
- With the client's permission, obtaining information from the existing or predecessor accountant.
 - Describing the limitations surrounding any opinion in communications with the client.
 - Providing the existing or predecessor accountant with a copy of the opinion.

CODE OF ETHICS

When Permission to Communicate is Not Provided

R321.4 If an entity seeking a second opinion from a professional accountant will not permit the accountant to communicate with the existing or predecessor accountant, the accountant shall determine whether the accountant may provide the second opinion sought.

SECTION 330

FEES AND OTHER TYPES OF REMUNERATION

Introduction

- 330.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 330.2 The level and nature of fee and other remuneration arrangements might create a self-interest threat to compliance with one or more of the fundamental principles. This section sets out specific application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Application Material

Level of Fees

- 330.3 A1 The level of fees quoted might impact a professional accountant's ability to perform professional services in accordance with professional standards.
- 330.3 A2 A professional accountant might quote whatever fee is considered appropriate. Quoting a fee lower than another accountant is not in itself unethical. However, the level of fees quoted creates a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of professional competence and due care if the fee quoted is so low that it might be difficult to perform the engagement in accordance with applicable technical and professional standards.
- 330.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:
- Whether the client is aware of the terms of the engagement and, in particular, the basis on which fees are charged and which professional services the quoted fee covers.
 - Whether the level of the fee is set by an independent third party such as a regulatory body.

CODE OF ETHICS

330.3 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Adjusting the level of fees or the scope of the engagement.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the work performed.

Contingent Fees

330.4 A1 Contingent fees are used for certain types of non-assurance services (specified in 330.4 A5). However, contingent fees might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles, particularly a self-interest threat to compliance with the principle of objectivity, in certain circumstances.

330.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The nature of the engagement.
- The range of possible fee amounts.
- The basis for determining the fee.
- Disclosure to intended users of the work performed by the professional accountant and the basis of remuneration.
- Quality control policies and procedures.
- Whether an independent third party is to review the outcome or result of the transaction.
- Whether the level of the fee is set by an independent third party such as a regulatory body.

330.4 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in performing the non-assurance service review the work performed by the professional accountant.
- Obtaining an advance written agreement with the client on the basis of remuneration.

CODE OF ETHICS

330.4 A4 Requirements and application material related to contingent fees for services provided to audit or review clients and other assurance clients are set out in Independence Standards.

330.4 A5 The fees which are based on a percentage of profits or which are contingent upon the findings, or results of such work, is not allowed except in cases which are permitted under Regulation 192 of The Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1988, given as under:-

- (a) *in the case of a receiver or a liquidator, the fees may be based on a percentage of the realisation or disbursement of the assets;*
- (b) *in the case of an auditor of a co-operative society, the fees may be based on a percentage of the paid-up capital or the working capital or the gross or net income or profits;*
- (c) *in the case of a valuer for the purposes of direct taxes and duties, the fees may be based on a percentage of the value of the property valued.*
- (d) *in the case of certain management consultancy services as may be decided by the resolution of the Council from time to time, the fees may be based on percentage basis which may be contingent upon the findings, or results of such work;*
- (e) *in the case of certain fund raising services, the fees may be based on a percentage of the fund raised;*
- (f) *in the case of debt recovery services, the fees may be based on a percentage of the debt recovered;*
- (g) *in the case of services related to cost optimisation, the fees may be based on a percentage of the benefit derived; and*
- (h) *any other service or audit as may be decided by the Council.*

The Council, pursuant to authority vested under clause (h) mentioned above, has in the following circumstances, permitted

CODE OF ETHICS

charging of fee based on percentage of profits or contingent upon the findings, or results of such work :-

- Charging of Fees by Members enrolled as Insolvency professional rendered either individually or as an entity under Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016 and rules made thereunder.
- Fee for rendering Non-assurance services to non-audit clients

Referral Fees or Commissions

330.5 A1 A self-interest threat to compliance with the principles of objectivity and professional competence and due care is created if a professional accountant pays or receives a referral fee relating to a client. Such referral fees include, for example:

- A fee paid to another professional accountant for the purposes of obtaining new client work when the client continues as a client of the existing accountant but requires specialist services not offered by that accountant.
- A fee received for referring a continuing client to another professional accountant or other expert where the existing accountant does not provide the specific professional service required by the client.

330.5 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Disclosing to clients any referral fees paid to, or received from, another professional accountant for recommending services might address a self-interest threat.

Purchase or Sale of a Firm

330.6 A1 In accordance with the Council guidelines, sale of goodwill is permissible only after the death of the proprietor of the Firm. The relevant extract of Council Guidelines is reproduced hereunder:-

- (a) *in respect of cases where the death of the proprietor concerned occurred on or after 30.8.1998.*

CODE OF ETHICS

Provided such a sale is completed/effectuated in all respects and the Institute's permission to practice in deceased's proprietary firm name is sought within a year of the death of such proprietor concerned. In respect of these cases, the name of the proprietary firm concerned would be kept in abeyance (i.e. not removed on receipt of information about the death of the proprietor as is being done at present) only up to a period of one year from the death of proprietor concerned as aforesaid.

- (b) *in respect of cases where the death of the proprietor concerned occurred on or after 30.8.1998 and there existed a dispute as to the legal heir of the deceased proprietor.*

Provided the information as to the existence of the dispute is received by the Institute within a year of the death of the proprietor concerned. In respect of these cases, the name of proprietary firm concerned shall be kept in abeyance till one year from the date of settlement of dispute.

- (c) *in respect of cases where the death of the proprietor concerned had occurred on or before 29th August, 1998 (irrespective of the time lag between the date of death of the proprietor concerned and the date of sale/transfer of goodwill completed/to be completed). Provided such a sale/transfer is completed/effectuated and the Institute's permission to practice in the deceased's proprietary firm name is sought for by 28th*

August, 1999 and also further provided that the firm name concerned is still available with the Institute.

It may be noted that the sale of goodwill of a Chartered Accountancy Firm is not allowed except as stated above.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 340

INDUCEMENTS, INCLUDING GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

Introduction

- 340.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 340.2 Offering or accepting inducements might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat to compliance with the fundamental principles, particularly the principles of integrity, objectivity and professional behaviour.
- 340.3 This section sets out requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in relation to the offering and accepting of inducements when performing professional services that does not constitute non-compliance with laws and regulations. This section also requires a professional accountant to comply with relevant laws and regulations when offering or accepting inducements.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 340.4 A1 An inducement is an object, situation, or action that is used as a means to influence another individual's behaviour, but not necessarily with the intent to improperly influence that individual's behaviour. Inducements can range from minor acts of hospitality between professional accountants and existing or prospective clients to acts that result in non-compliance with laws and regulations. An inducement can take many different forms, for example:
- Gifts.
 - Hospitality.
 - Entertainment.
 - Political or charitable donations.
 - Appeals to friendship and loyalty.

- Employment or other commercial opportunities.
- Preferential treatment, rights or privileges.

Inducements Prohibited by Laws and Regulations

R340.5 The professional accountant shall obtain an understanding of relevant laws and regulations, if any, and comply with them when the accountant encounters such circumstances.

Inducements Not Prohibited by Laws and Regulations

340.6 A1 The offering or accepting of inducements that is not prohibited by laws and regulations might still create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.

Inducements with Intent to Improperly Influence Behaviour

R340.7 A professional accountant shall not offer, or encourage others to offer, any inducement that is made, or which the accountant considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude is made, with the intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

R340.8 A professional accountant shall not accept, or encourage others to accept, any inducement that the accountant concludes is made, or considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude is made, with the intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

340.9 A1 An inducement is considered as improperly influencing an individual's behaviour if it causes the individual to act in an unethical manner. Such improper influence can be directed either towards the recipient or towards another individual who has some relationship with the recipient. The fundamental principles are an appropriate frame of reference for a professional accountant in considering what constitutes unethical behaviour on the part of the accountant and, if necessary by analogy, other individuals.

340.9 A2 A breach of the fundamental principle of integrity arises when a professional accountant offers or accepts, or encourages others to offer or accept, an inducement where the intent is to

CODE OF ETHICS

improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.

340.9 A3 The determination of whether there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour requires the exercise of professional judgment. Relevant factors to consider might include:

- The nature, frequency, value and cumulative effect of the inducement.
- Timing of when the inducement is offered relative to any action or decision that it might influence.
- Whether the inducement is a customary or cultural practice in the circumstances, for example, offering a gift on the occasion of a religious holiday or wedding.
- Whether the inducement is an ancillary part of a professional service, for example, offering or accepting lunch in connection with a business meeting.
- Whether the offer of the inducement is limited to an individual recipient or available to a broader group. The broader group might be internal or external to the firm, such as other suppliers to the client.
- The roles and positions of the individuals at the firm or the client offering or being offered the inducement.
- Whether the professional accountant knows, or has reason to believe, that accepting the inducement would breach the policies and procedures of the client.
- The degree of transparency with which the inducement is offered.
- Whether the inducement was required or requested by the recipient.
- The known previous behaviour or reputation of the offeror.

Consideration of Further Actions

- 340.10 A1 If the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement offered with actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour, threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might still be created even if the requirements in paragraphs R340.7 and R340.8 are met.
- 340.10 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats include:
- Informing senior management of the firm or those charged with governance of the client regarding the offer.
 - Amending or terminating the business relationship with the client.

Inducements with No Intent to Improperly Influence Behaviour

- 340.11 A1 The requirements and application material set out in the conceptual framework apply when a professional accountant has concluded there is no actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the recipient or of another individual.
- 340.11 A2 If such an inducement is trivial and inconsequential, any threats created will be at an acceptable level.
- 340.11 A3 Examples of circumstances where offering or accepting such an inducement might create threats even if the professional accountant has concluded there is no actual or perceived intent to improperly influence behaviour include:
- Self-interest threats
 - A professional accountant is offered hospitality from the prospective acquirer of a client while providing corporate finance services to the client.
 - Familiarity threats
 - A professional accountant regularly takes an existing or prospective client to sporting events.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Intimidation threats
 - A professional accountant accepts hospitality from a client, the nature of which could be perceived to be inappropriate were it to be publicly disclosed.
- 340.11 A4 Relevant factors in evaluating the level of such threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include the same factors set out in paragraph 340.9 A3 for determining intent.
- 340.11 A5 Examples of actions that might eliminate threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include:
- Declining or not offering the inducement.
 - Transferring responsibility for the provision of any professional services to the client to another individual who the professional accountant has no reason to believe would be, or would be perceived to be, improperly influenced when providing the services.
- 340.11 A6 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats created by offering or accepting such an inducement include:
- Being transparent with senior management of the firm or of the client about offering or accepting an inducement.
 - Registering the inducement in a log monitored by senior management of the firm or another individual responsible for the firm's ethics compliance or maintained by the client.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer, who is not otherwise involved in providing the professional service, review any work performed or decisions made by the professional accountant with respect to the client from which the accountant accepted the inducement.
 - Donating the inducement to charity after receipt and appropriately disclosing the donation, for example, to a

CODE OF ETHICS

member of senior management of the firm or the individual who offered the inducement.

- Reimbursing the cost of the inducement, such as hospitality, received.
- As soon as possible, returning the inducement, such as a gift, after it was initially accepted.

Immediate or Close Family Members

R340.12 A professional accountant shall remain alert to potential threats to the accountant's compliance with the fundamental principles created by the offering of an inducement:

- (a) By an immediate or close family member of the accountant to an existing or prospective client of the accountant.
- (b) To an immediate or close family member of the accountant by an existing or prospective client of the accountant.

R340.13 Where the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement being offered to or made by an immediate or close family member and concludes there is intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the accountant or of an existing or prospective client of the accountant, or considers a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude such intent exists, the accountant shall advise the immediate or close family member not to offer or accept the inducement.

340.13 A1 The factors set out in paragraph 340. 9 A3 are relevant in determining whether there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the professional accountant or of the existing or prospective client. Another factor that is relevant is the nature or closeness of the relationship, between:

- (a) The accountant and the immediate or close family member;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b) The immediate or close family member and the existing or prospective client; and
- (c) The accountant and the existing or prospective client.

For example, the offer of employment, outside of the normal recruitment process, to the spouse of the accountant by a client for whom the accountant is providing a business valuation for a prospective sale might indicate such intent.

- 340.13 A2 The application material in paragraph 340.10 A2 is also relevant in addressing threats that might be created when there is actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the professional accountant, or of the existing or prospective client even if the immediate or close family member has followed the advice given pursuant to paragraph R340.13.

Application of the Conceptual Framework

- 340.14 A1 Where the professional accountant becomes aware of an inducement offered in the circumstances addressed in paragraph R340.12, threats to compliance with the fundamental principles might be created where:

- (a) The immediate or close family member offers or accepts the inducement contrary to the advice of the accountant pursuant to paragraph R340.13; or
- (b) The accountant does not have reason to believe an actual or perceived intent to improperly influence the behaviour of the accountant or of the existing or prospective client exists.

- 340.14 A2 The application material in paragraphs 340.11 A1 to 340.11 A6 is relevant for the purposes of identifying, evaluating and addressing such threats. Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats in these circumstances also include the nature or closeness of the relationships set out in paragraph 340.13 A1.

Other Considerations

- 340.15 A1 If a professional accountant encounters or is made aware of

CODE OF ETHICS

inducements that might result in non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations by a client or individuals working for or under the direction of the client, the requirements and application material in Section 360 apply.

- 340.15 A2 If a firm, network firm or an audit team member is being offered gifts or hospitality from an audit client, the requirement and application material set out in Section 420 apply.
- 340.15 A3 If a firm or an assurance team member is being offered gifts or hospitality from an assurance client, the requirement and application material set out in Section 906 apply.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 350

CUSTODY OF CLIENT ASSETS

Introduction

- 350.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 350.2 Holding client assets creates a self-interest or other threat to compliance with the principles of professional behaviour and objectivity. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Before Taking Custody

- R350.3** A professional accountant shall not assume custody of client money or other assets unless permitted to do so by law and in accordance with any conditions under which such custody may be taken.
- R350.4** As part of client and engagement acceptance procedures related to assuming custody of client money or assets, a professional accountant shall:
- (a) Make inquiries about the source of the assets; and
 - (b) Consider related legal and regulatory obligations.
- 350.4 A1 Inquiries about the source of client assets might reveal, for example, that the assets were derived from illegal activities, such as money laundering. In such circumstances, a threat would be created and the provisions of Section 360 would apply.

After Taking Custody

- R350.5** A professional accountant entrusted with money or other assets belonging to others shall:
- (a) Comply with the laws and regulations relevant to holding and accounting for the assets;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b) Keep the assets separately from personal or firm assets;
- (c) Use the assets only for the purpose for which they are intended; and
- (d) Be ready at all times to account for the assets and any income, dividends, or gains generated, to any individuals entitled to that accounting.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 360

RESPONDING TO NON-COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS DURING THE COURSE OF AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS OF LISTED ENTITIES

Introduction

- 360.1 Professional accountants are required to comply with the fundamental principles and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats.
- 360.2 A self-interest or intimidation threat to compliance with the principles of integrity and professional behaviour is created when a professional accountant becomes aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations during the course of audit.

Applicability

- 360.3 A professional accountant might encounter or be made aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance during the course of Audit Engagements of listed entities. This section guides the accountant in assessing the implications of the matter and the possible courses of action when responding to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with:
- (a) Laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the client's financial statements; and
 - (b) Other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the client's financial statements, but compliance with which might be fundamental to the operating aspects of the client's business, to its ability to continue its business, or to avoid material penalties.

Objectives of the Professional Accountant in Relation to Non-compliance with Laws and Regulations

- 360.4 A distinguishing mark of the accountancy profession is its

CODE OF ETHICS

acceptance of the responsibility to act in the public interest. When responding to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the objectives of the professional accountant are:

- (a) To comply with the principles of integrity and professional behaviour;
- (b) By alerting management or, where appropriate, those charged with governance of the client, to seek to:
 - (i) Enable them to rectify, remediate or mitigate the consequences of the identified or suspected non-compliance; or
 - (ii) Deter the commission of the non-compliance where it has not yet occurred; and
- (c) To take such further action as appropriate in the public interest.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 360.5 A1 Non-compliance with laws and regulations (“non-compliance”) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations committed by the following parties:
- (a) A client;
 - (b) Those charged with governance of a client;
 - (c) Management of a client; or
 - (d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of a client.
- 360.5 A2 Examples of laws and regulations which this section addresses include those that deal with:
- Fraud, corruption and bribery.
 - Money laundering, terrorist financing and proceeds of crime.
 - Securities markets and trading.
 - Banking and other financial products and services.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Data protection.
- Tax and pension liabilities and payments.
- Environmental protection.
- Public health and safety.

360.5 A3 Non-compliance might result in fines, litigation or other consequences for the client, potentially materially affecting its financial statements. Importantly, such non-compliance might have wider public interest implications in terms of potentially substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. For the purposes of this section, an act that causes substantial harm is one that results in serious adverse consequences to any of these parties in financial or non-financial terms. Examples include the perpetration of a fraud resulting in significant financial losses to investors, and breaches of environmental laws and regulations endangering the health or safety of employees or the public.

R360.6 When encountering such non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall obtain an understanding of legal or regulatory provisions governing such non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, and comply with them, including:

- (a) Any requirement to report the matter to an appropriate authority; and
- (b) Any prohibition on alerting the client.

360.6 A1 A prohibition on alerting the client might arise, for example, pursuant to anti-money laundering legislation.

360.7 A1 This section applies to audit engagements of listed entities.

360.7 A2 A professional accountant who encounters or is made aware of matters that are clearly inconsequential is not required to comply with this section. Whether a matter is clearly inconsequential is to be judged with respect to its nature and its impact, financial or otherwise, on the client, its stakeholders and the general public.

360.7 A3 This section does not address:

- (a) Personal misconduct unrelated to the business activities of the client; and
- (b) Non-compliance by parties other than those specified in paragraph 360.5 A1.

The accountant might nevertheless find the guidance in this section helpful in considering how to respond in these situations.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance

360.8 A1 Management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, is responsible for ensuring that the client's business activities are conducted in accordance with laws and regulations. Management and those charged with governance are also responsible for identifying and addressing any non-compliance by:

- (a) The client;
- (b) An individual charged with governance of the entity;
- (c) A member of management; or
- (d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of the client.

Responsibilities of the Professional Accountant

R360.9 Where a professional accountant becomes aware of a matter to which this section applies, the steps that the accountant takes to comply with this section shall be taken on a timely basis. In taking timely steps, the accountant shall have regard to the nature of the matter and the potential harm to the interests of the entity, investors, creditors, employees or the general public.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Matter

R360.10 If a professional accountant engaged to perform an audit of financial statements becomes aware of information concerning non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall obtain an understanding of the matter. This understanding

CODE OF ETHICS

shall include the nature of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance and the circumstances in which it has occurred or might occur.

- 360.10 A1 The professional accountant might become aware of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance in the course of performing the engagement or through information provided by other parties.
- 360.10 A2 The professional accountant is expected to apply knowledge and expertise, and exercise professional judgment. However, the accountant is not expected to have a level of knowledge of laws and regulations greater than that which is required to undertake the engagement. Whether an act constitutes non-compliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.
- 360.10 A3 Depending on the nature and significance of the matter, the professional accountant might consult on a confidential basis with others within the firm, a network firm or the Institute or with legal counsel.
- R360.11** If the professional accountant identifies or suspects that non-compliance has occurred or might occur, the accountant shall discuss the matter with the appropriate level of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance.
- 360.11 A1 The purpose of the discussion is to clarify the professional accountant's understanding of the facts and circumstances relevant to the matter and its potential consequences. The discussion also might prompt management or those charged with governance to investigate the matter.
- 360.11 A2 The appropriate level of management with whom to discuss the matter is a question of professional judgment. Relevant factors to consider include:
- The nature and circumstances of the matter.
 - The individuals actually or potentially involved.
 - The likelihood of collusion.

CODE OF ETHICS

- The potential consequences of the matter.
 - Whether that level of management is able to investigate the matter and take appropriate action.
- 360.11 A3 The appropriate level of management is usually at least one level above the individual or individuals involved or potentially involved in the matter. In the context of a group, the appropriate level might be management at an entity that controls the client.
- 360.11 A4 The professional accountant might also consider discussing the matter with internal auditors, where applicable.
- R360.12** If the professional accountant believes that management is involved in the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance, the accountant shall discuss the matter with those charged with governance.

Addressing the Matter

- R360.13** In discussing the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, the professional accountant shall advise them to take appropriate and timely actions, if they have not already done so, to:
- (a) Rectify, remediate or mitigate the consequences of the non-compliance;
 - (b) Deter the commission of the non-compliance where it has not yet occurred; or
 - (c) Disclose the matter to an appropriate authority where required by law or regulation or where considered necessary in the public interest.
- R360.14** The professional accountant shall consider whether management and those charged with governance understand their legal or regulatory responsibilities with respect to the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance.
- 360.14 A1 If management and those charged with governance do not understand their legal or regulatory responsibilities with respect to the matter, the professional accountant might suggest

CODE OF ETHICS

appropriate sources of information or recommend that they obtain legal advice.

R360.15 The professional accountant shall comply with applicable:

- (a) Laws and regulations, including legal or regulatory provisions governing the reporting of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance to an appropriate authority; and
- (b) Requirements under auditing standards, including those relating to:
 - Identifying and responding to non-compliance, including fraud.
 - Communicating with those charged with governance.
 - Considering the implications of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance for the auditor's report.

360.15 A1 Some laws and regulations might stipulate a period within which reports of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance are to be made to an appropriate authority.

Communication with Respect to Groups

R360.16 Where a professional accountant becomes aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance in relation to a component of a group, where the parent company is listed (in India) or the component is a listed entity, in either of the following two situations, the accountant shall communicate the matter to the group engagement partner unless prohibited from doing so by law or regulation:

- (a) The accountant is, for purposes of an audit of the group financial statements, requested by the group engagement team to perform work on financial information related to the component; or
- (b) The accountant is engaged to perform an audit of the component's financial statements for purposes other than the group audit, for example, a statutory audit.

CODE OF ETHICS

The communication to the group engagement partner shall be in addition to responding to the matter in accordance with the provisions of this section.

360.16 A1 The purpose of the communication is to enable the group engagement partner to be informed about the matter and to determine, in the context of the group audit, whether and, if so, how to address it in accordance with the provisions in this section. The communication requirement in paragraph R360.16 applies regardless of whether the group engagement partner's firm or network is the same as or different from the professional accountant's firm or network.

R360.17 Where the group engagement partner, where the parent company (being a company incorporated under the laws applicable in India) or the component is a listed entity, becomes aware of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance in the course of an audit of group financial statements, the group engagement partner shall consider whether the matter might be relevant to one or more components:

- (a) Whose financial information is subject to work for purposes of the audit of the group financial statements; or
- (b) Whose financial statements are subject to audit for purposes other than the group audit, for example, a statutory audit.

This consideration shall be in addition to responding to the matter in the context of the group audit in accordance with the provisions of this section.

R360.18 If the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance might be relevant to one or more of the components specified in paragraph R360.17(a) and (b), the group engagement partner shall take steps to have the matter communicated to those performing work at the components, unless prohibited from doing so by law or regulation. If necessary, the group engagement partner shall arrange for appropriate inquiries to be made (either of management or from publicly available information) as to whether the relevant component(s) specified

CODE OF ETHICS

in paragraph R360.17(b) is subject to audit and, if so, to ascertain to the extent practicable the identity of the auditor.360.18 A1 The purpose of the communication is to enable those responsible for work at the components to be informed about the matter and to determine whether and, if so, how to address it in accordance with the provisions in this section. The communication requirement applies regardless of whether the group engagement partner's firm or network is the same as or different from the firms or networks of those performing work at the components.

Determining Whether Further Action Is Needed

R360.19 The professional accountant shall assess the appropriateness of the response of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance.

360.19 A1 Relevant factors to consider in assessing the appropriateness of the response of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance include whether:

- The response is timely.
- The non-compliance or suspected non-compliance has been adequately investigated.
- Action has been, or is being, taken to rectify, remediate or mitigate the consequences of any non-compliance.
- Action has been, or is being, taken to deter the commission of any non-compliance where it has not yet occurred.
- Appropriate steps have been, or are being, taken to reduce the risk of re-occurrence, for example, additional controls or training.
- The non-compliance or suspected non-compliance has been disclosed to an appropriate authority where appropriate and, if so, whether the disclosure appears adequate.

R360.20 In light of the response of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance, the professional accountant shall determine if further action is needed in the public interest.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 360.20 A1 The determination of whether further action is needed, and the nature and extent of it, will depend on various factors, including:
- The legal and regulatory framework.
 - The urgency of the situation.
 - The pervasiveness of the matter throughout the client.
 - Whether the professional accountant continues to have confidence in the integrity of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance.
 - Whether the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance is likely to recur.
 - Whether there is credible evidence of actual or potential substantial harm to the interests of the entity, investors, creditors, employees or the general public.
- 360.20 A2 Examples of circumstances that might cause the professional accountant no longer to have confidence in the integrity of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance include situations where:
- The accountant suspects or has evidence of their involvement or intended involvement in any non-compliance.
 - The accountant is aware that they have knowledge of such non-compliance and, contrary to legal or regulatory requirements, have not reported, or authorized the reporting of, the matter to an appropriate authority within a reasonable period.
- R360.21** The professional accountant shall exercise professional judgment in determining the need for, and nature and extent of, further action. In making this determination, the accountant shall take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that the accountant has acted appropriately in the public interest.
- 360.21 A1 Further action that the professional accountant might take includes:

CODE OF ETHICS

- Disclosing the matter to an appropriate authority as specified under respective law
 - Withdrawing from the engagement and the professional relationship where permitted by law or regulation.
- 360.21 A2 Withdrawing from the engagement and the professional relationship is not a substitute for taking other actions that might be needed to achieve the professional accountant's objectives under this section. However, there might be limitations as to the further actions available to the accountant. In such circumstances, withdrawal might be the only available course of action.
- R360.22** Where the professional accountant has withdrawn from the professional relationship pursuant to paragraphs R360.20 and 360.21 A1, the accountant shall, on request by the proposed accountant pursuant to paragraph R320.8, provide all relevant facts and other information concerning the identified or suspected non-compliance to the proposed accountant.
- 360.22 A1 The facts and other information to be provided are those that, in the predecessor accountant's opinion, the proposed accountant needs to be aware of before deciding whether to accept the audit appointment. Section 320 addresses communications from proposed accountants.
- 360.23 A1 As assessment of the matter might involve complex analysis and judgments, the professional accountant might consider:
- Consulting internally.
 - Obtaining legal advice to understand the accountant's options and the professional or legal implications of taking any particular course of action.
 - Consulting on a confidential basis with the Institute.

Determining Whether to Disclose the Matter to an Appropriate Authority

- 360.24 A1 Disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority would be precluded if doing so would be contrary to law or regulation. Otherwise, the purpose of making disclosure is to enable an

CODE OF ETHICS

appropriate authority to cause the matter to be investigated and action to be taken in the public interest.

360.24 A2 The determination of whether to make such a disclosure depends in particular on the nature and extent of the actual or potential harm that is or might be caused by the matter to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. For example, the professional accountant might determine that disclosure of the matter to an appropriate authority is an appropriate course of action if:

- The entity is engaged in bribery (for example, of local or foreign government officials for purposes of securing large contracts).
- The entity is regulated and the matter is of such significance as to threaten its license to operate.
- The entity is listed on a securities exchange and the matter might result in adverse consequences to the fair and orderly market in the entity's securities or pose a systemic risk to the financial markets.
- It is likely that the entity would sell products that are harmful to public health or safety.
- The entity is promoting a scheme to its clients to assist them in evading taxes.

360.24 A3 The determination of whether to make such a disclosure will also depend on external factors such as:

- Whether there is an appropriate authority that is able to receive the information, and cause the matter to be investigated and action to be taken. The appropriate authority will depend on the nature of the matter. For example, the appropriate authority would be the Institute in case of complaint of professional misconduct against a professional accountant, whether in public practice or in service, Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) in the case of fraudulent financial reporting or an environmental protection agency e.g. Environment

CODE OF ETHICS

Pollution (Prevention & Control) Authority for National Capital Region of Delhi in the case of a breach of environmental laws and regulations.

- Whether there exists robust and credible protection from civil, criminal or professional liability or retaliation afforded by legislation or regulation, such as under whistle-blowing legislation or regulation.
- Whether there are actual or potential threats to the physical safety of the professional accountant or other individuals.

R360.25 If the professional accountant determines that disclosure of the non-compliance or suspected non-compliance to an appropriate authority, if required, is an appropriate course of action in the circumstances, that disclosure is permitted pursuant to paragraph R114.1(d) of the Code. When making such disclosure, the accountant shall act in good faith and exercise caution when making statements and assertions. The accountant shall also consider whether it is appropriate to inform the client of the accountant's intentions before disclosing the matter.

Imminent Breach

R360.26 In exceptional circumstances, the professional accountant might become aware of actual or intended conduct that the accountant has reason to believe would constitute an imminent breach of a law or regulation that would cause substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees or the general public. Having first considered whether it would be appropriate to discuss the matter with management or those charged with governance of the entity, the accountant shall exercise professional judgment and determine whether to disclose the matter immediately to an appropriate authority in order to prevent or mitigate the consequences of such imminent breach.

Documentation

R360.27 In relation to non-compliance or suspected non-compliance that

CODE OF ETHICS

falls within the scope of this section, the professional accountant shall document:

- How management and, where applicable, those charged with governance have responded to the matter.
- The courses of action the accountant considered, the judgments made and the decisions that were taken, having regard to the reasonable and informed third party test.
- How the accountant is satisfied that the accountant has fulfilled the responsibility set out in paragraph R360.20.

360.27 A1 This documentation is in addition to complying with the documentation requirements under applicable auditing standards. SAs, for example, require a professional accountant performing an audit of financial statements to:

- Prepare documentation sufficient to enable an understanding of significant matters arising during the audit, the conclusions reached, and significant professional judgments made in reaching those conclusions;
- Document discussions of significant matters with management, those charged with governance, and others, including the nature of the significant matters discussed and when and with whom the discussions took place; and
- Document identified or suspected non-compliance, and the results of discussion with management and, where applicable, those charged with governance and other parties outside the entity.

PART 4A – INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

	Page
Section 400 Applying the Conceptual Framework to Independence for Audit and Review Engagements.....	126
Section 410 Fees	143
Section 411 Compensation and Evaluation Policies.....	148
Section 420 Gifts and Hospitality.....	150
Section 430 Actual or Threatened Litigation	151
Section 510 Financial Interests	152
Section 511 Loans and Guarantees.....	159
Section 520 Business Relationships	163
Section 521 Family and Personal Relationships.....	166
Section 522 Recent Service with an Audit Client	171
Section 523 Serving as a Director or Officer of an Audit Client	173
Section 524 Employment with an Audit Client	175
Section 525 Temporary Personnel Assignments	179
Section 540 Long Association of Personnel (Including Partner Rotation) with an Audit Client.....	181
Section 550 Auditor Rotation	190
Section 600 Provision of Non-Assurance Services to an Audit Client	194
Subsection 601 – Accounting and Bookkeeping Services ..	201
Subsection 602 – Administrative Services	205
Subsection 603 – Valuation Services	205
Subsection 604 – Tax Services	207
Subsection 605 – Internal Audit Services	214
Subsection 606 – Information Technology Systems Services	215

CODE OF ETHICS

	Subsection 607 – Litigation Support Services	218
	Subsection 608 – Legal Services	219
	Subsection 609 – Recruiting Services	221
	Subsection 610 – Corporate Finance Services	224
Section 800	Reports on Special Purpose Financial Statements that Include a Restriction on Use and Distribution (Audit and Review Engagements)	227

CODE OF ETHICS

INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS (PARTS 4A AND 4B)

PART 4A – INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

SECTION 400

APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

Introduction

General

- 400.1 It is in the public interest and required by the Code that professional accountants in public practice be independent when performing audit or review engagements in accordance with the requirements of the Code along with any additional requirements. Such requirements may be prescribed from time to time under the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, the Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1988, Council guidelines, Companies Act 2013, or by other Regulators such as the Reserve Bank of India (RBI), Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI), Insurance Regulatory Development Authority (IRDA) etc.
- 400.2 This Part applies to both audit and review engagements. The terms “audit,” “audit team,” “audit engagement,” “audit client,” and “audit report” apply equally to review, review team, review engagement, review client, and review engagement report.
- 400.3 In this Part, the term “professional accountant” refers to individual professional accountants in public practice and their firms.
- 400.4 SQC 1 requires a firm to establish policies and procedures designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that the firm, its personnel and, where applicable, others subject to independence requirements (including network firm personnel), maintain independence where required by relevant ethics requirements. SAs and SREs establish responsibilities for

CODE OF ETHICS

engagement partners and engagement teams at the level of the engagement for audits and reviews, respectively. The allocation of responsibilities within a firm will depend on its size, structure and organization. Many of the provisions of this Part do not prescribe the specific responsibility of individuals within the firm for actions related to independence, instead referring to “firm” for ease of reference. Firms assign responsibility for a particular action to an individual or a group of individuals (such as an audit team), in accordance with SQC 1. In addition, an individual professional accountant remains responsible for compliance with any provisions that apply to that accountant’s activities, interests or relationships.

400.5 Independence is linked to the principles of objectivity and integrity. It comprises:

- (a) Independence of mind – the state of mind that permits the expression of a conclusion without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment, thereby allowing an individual to act with integrity, and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism.
- (b) Independence in appearance – the avoidance of facts and circumstances that are so significant that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that a firm’s, or an audit team member’s, integrity, objectivity or professional skepticism has been compromised.

In this Part, references to an individual or firm being “independent” mean that the individual or firm has complied with the provisions of this Part.

400.6 When performing audit engagements, the Code requires firms to comply with the fundamental principles and be independent. This Part sets out specific requirements and application material on how to apply the conceptual framework to maintain independence when performing such engagements. The conceptual framework set out in Section 120 applies to independence as it does to the fundamental principles set out in Section 110.

CODE OF ETHICS

R400.6.1 Additional independence requirements are set out for a statutory auditor under the Companies Act 2013. Section 139(2) of the Companies Act, 2013 prescribes the auditor rotation requirements which have been discussed in detail in Section 550.

Section 141(3) of the Companies Act 2013 (subject to amendments as may be made from time to time) is reproduced below:

“141 (3) The following persons shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company, namely:—

- (a) a body corporate other than a limited liability partnership registered under the Limited Liability Partnership Act, 2008;*
- (b) an officer or employee of the company;*
- (c) a person who is a partner, or who is in the employment, of an officer or employee of the company;*
- (d) a person who, or his relative or partner—*
 - (i) is holding any security of or interest in the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company:*

Provided that the relative may hold security or interest in the company of face value not exceeding one thousand rupees or such sum as may be prescribed¹;

As per Rule 10 of The Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014:-

¹ For the purpose of proviso to sub-clause (i) of clause (d) of sub-section (3) of section 141, a relative of an auditor may hold securities in the company of face value not exceeding rupees one lakh:

Provided that the condition under this sub-rule shall, wherever relevant, be also applicable in the case of a company not having share capital or other securities:

Provided further that in the event of acquiring any security or interest by a relative, above the threshold prescribed, the corrective action to maintain the limits as specified above shall be taken by the auditor within sixty days of such acquisition or interest.

CODE OF ETHICS

- (ii) is indebted to the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company, in excess of such amount as may be prescribed²; or*
- (iii) has given a guarantee or provided any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person to the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company, for such amount as may be prescribed³;*
- (e) a person or a firm who, whether directly or indirectly, has business relationship⁴ with the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company or associate company of such nature as may be prescribed;*
- (f) a person whose relative is a director or is in the employment of the company as a director or key*

² For the purpose of sub-clause (ii) of clause (d) of sub-section (3) of section 141, a person who or whose relative or partner is indebted to the company or its subsidiary or its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company, in excess of rupees five lakhs shall not be eligible for appointment.

³ For the purpose of sub-clause (iii) of clause (d) of sub-section (3) of section 141, a person who or whose relative or partner has given a guarantee or provided any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person to the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company, in excess of one lakh rupees shall not be eligible for appointment.

⁴ For the purpose of clause (e) of sub-section (3) of section 141, the term "business relationship" shall be construed as any transaction entered into for a commercial purpose, except -

(i) commercial transactions which are in the nature of professional services permitted to be rendered by an auditor or audit firm under the Act and the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949 and the rules or the regulations made under those Acts;

(ii) commercial transactions which are in the ordinary course of business of the company at arm's length price - like sale of products or services to the auditor, as customer, in the ordinary course of business, by companies engaged in the business of telecommunications, airlines, hospitals, hotels and such other similar businesses.

CODE OF ETHICS

managerial personnel;

- (g) *a person who is in full time employment elsewhere or a person or a partner of a firm holding appointment as its auditor, if such persons or partner is at the date of such appointment or reappointment holding appointment as auditor of more than twenty companies*
- (h) *a person who has been convicted by a court of an offence involving fraud and a period of ten years has not elapsed from the date of such conviction;*
- (i) *a person who, directly or indirectly, renders any service referred to in section 144 to the company or its holding company or its subsidiary company.*

Explanation — For the purposes of this clause, the term "directly or indirectly" shall have the meaning assigned to it in the Explanation to section 144.

- (4) *Where a person appointed as an auditor of a company incurs any of the disqualifications mentioned in sub-section (3) after his appointment, he shall vacate his office as such auditor and such vacation shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy in the office of the auditor."*

400.7 This Part describes:

- (a) Facts and circumstances, including professional activities, interests and relationships, that create or might create threats to independence;
- (b) Potential actions, including safeguards, that might be appropriate to address any such threats; and
- (c) Some situations where the threats cannot be eliminated or there can be no safeguards to reduce them to an acceptable level.

Public Interest Entities

400.8 Some of the requirements and application material set out in this Part reflect the extent of public interest in certain entities which are defined to be public interest entities. Firms are encouraged to determine whether to treat additional entities, or

CODE OF ETHICS

certain categories of entities, as public interest entities because they have a large number and wide range of stakeholders. Factors to be considered include:

- The nature of the business, such as the holding of assets in a fiduciary capacity for a large number of stakeholders. Examples might include financial institutions, such as banks and insurance companies, and pension funds.
- Size.
- Number of employees.

Reports that Include a Restriction on Use and Distribution

400.9 An audit report might include a restriction on use and distribution. If it does and the conditions set out in Section 800 are met, then the independence requirements in this Part may be modified as provided in Section 800.

Assurance Engagements other than Audit and Review Engagements

400.10 Independence standards for assurance engagements that are not audit or review engagements are set out in Part 4B – *Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements*.

Requirements and Application Material

General

R400.11 A firm performing an audit engagement shall be independent.

R400.12 A firm shall apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence in relation to an audit engagement.

Related Entities

R400.20 As defined, an audit client that is a listed entity includes all of its related entities. For all other entities, references to an audit client in this Part include related entities over which the client has direct or indirect control. When the audit team knows, or has reason to believe, that a relationship or circumstance

CODE OF ETHICS

involving any other related entity of the client is relevant to the evaluation of the firm's independence from the client, the audit team shall include that related entity when identifying, evaluating and addressing threats to independence. Besides the above, where the audit client is subject to the provisions of Companies Act, 2013, additional restrictions are prescribed under Section 141 and 144 of the Companies Act, 2013.

Period During which Independence is Required

R400.30 Independence, as required by this Part, shall be maintained during both:

- (a) The engagement period; and
- (b) The period covered by the financial statements.

400.30 A1 The engagement period starts when the audit team begins to perform the audit. The engagement period ends when the audit report is issued. When the engagement is of a recurring nature, it ends at the later of the notification by either party that the professional relationship has ended or the issuance of the final audit report. Where the audit client is a statutory audit client under the Companies Act, 2013, the engagement period shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 139 of the Companies Act, 2013.

R400.31 If an entity becomes an audit client during or after the period covered by the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion, the firm shall determine whether any threats to independence are created by:

- (a) Financial or business relationships with the audit client during or after the period covered by the financial statements but before accepting the audit engagement; or
- (b) Previous services provided to the audit client by the firm or a network firm.

400.31 A1 Threats to independence are created if a non-assurance service was provided to an audit client during, or after the period covered by the financial statements, but before the audit team

CODE OF ETHICS

begins to perform the audit, and the service would not be permitted during the engagement period.

400.31 A2 Subject to compliance with the requirements of Section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the audit and non-assurance work as appropriate.
- Engaging another firm outside of the network to evaluate the results of the non- assurance service or having another firm outside of the network re-perform the non-assurance service to the extent necessary to enable the other firm to take responsibility for the service.

Communication with those Charged with Governance

400.40 A1 Paragraphs R300.9 and R300.10 set out requirements with respect to communicating with those charged with governance.

400.40 A2 Even when not required by the Code, applicable professional standards, laws or regulations, regular communication is encouraged between a firm and those charged with governance of the client regarding relationships and other matters that might, in the firm's opinion, reasonably bear on independence. Such communication enables those charged with governance to:

- (a) Consider the firm's judgments in identifying and evaluating threats;
- (b) Consider how threats have been addressed including the appropriateness of safeguards when they are available and capable of being applied; and
- (c) Take appropriate action.

Such an approach can be particularly helpful with respect to intimidation and familiarity threats.

CODE OF ETHICS

Network Firms

400.50 A1 Firms may frequently form larger structures with other firms and entities to enhance their ability to provide professional services. Whether these larger structures create a network depends on the particular facts and circumstances. It does not depend on whether the firms and entities are legally separate and distinct. Reference may be made to the Guidelines of Network issued by the Institute from time to time in this regard.

R400.51 A network firm shall be independent of the audit clients of the other firms within the network as required by this Part.

400.51 A1 The independence requirements in this Part that apply to a network firm apply to any entity that meets the definition of a network firm.

General Documentation of Independence for Audit and Review Engagements

R400.60 A firm shall document conclusions regarding compliance with this Part, and the substance of any relevant discussions that support those conclusions. In particular:

- (a) When safeguards are applied to address a threat, the firm shall document the nature of the threat and the safeguards in place or applied; and
- (b) When a threat required significant analysis and the firm concluded that the threat was already at an acceptable level, the firm shall document the nature of the threat and the rationale for the conclusion.

400.60 A1 Documentation provides evidence of the firm's judgments in forming conclusions regarding compliance with this Part. However, a lack of documentation does not determine whether a firm considered a particular matter or whether the firm is independent.

Mergers and Acquisitions

When a Client Merger Creates a Threat

400.70 A1 An entity might become a related entity of an audit client

CODE OF ETHICS

because of a merger or acquisition. A threat to independence and, therefore, to the ability of a firm to continue an audit engagement might be created by previous or current interests or relationships between a firm or network firm and such a related entity.

- R400.71** In the circumstances set out in paragraph 400.70 A1,
- (a)** The firm shall identify and evaluate previous and current interests and relationships with the related entity that, taking into account any actions taken to address the threat, might affect its independence and therefore its ability to continue the audit engagement after the effective date of the merger or acquisition; and
 - (b)** Subject to paragraph R400.72, the firm shall take steps to end any interests or relationships that are not permitted by the Code by the effective date of the merger or acquisition.
- R400.72** As an exception to paragraph R400.71(b), if the interest or relationship cannot reasonably be ended by the effective date of the merger or acquisition, the firm shall:
- (a)** Evaluate the threat that is created by the interest or relationship; and
 - (b)** Discuss with those charged with governance the reasons why the interest or relationship cannot reasonably be ended by the effective date and the evaluation of the level of the threat.
- 400.72 A1 In some circumstances, it might not be reasonably possible to end an interest or relationship creating a threat by the effective date of the merger or acquisition. This might be because the firm provides a non-assurance service to the related entity, which the entity is not able to transition in an orderly manner to another provider by that date.
- 400.72 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a threat created by mergers and acquisitions when there are interests and relationships that cannot reasonably be ended include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- The nature and significance of the interest or relationship.
- The nature and significance of the related entity relationship (for example, whether the related entity is a subsidiary or parent).
- The length of time until the interest or relationship can reasonably be ended.

R400.73 Subject to applicable restrictions under Companies Act, 2013 or any other laws and regulations, if, following the discussion set out in paragraph R400.72(b), those charged with governance request the firm to continue as the auditor, the firm shall do so only if:

- (a) The interest or relationship will be ended as soon as reasonably possible but no later than six months after the effective date of the merger or acquisition;
- (b) Any individual who has such an interest or relationship, including one that has arisen through performing a non-assurance service that would not be permitted by Section 600 and its subsections, will not be a member of the engagement team for the audit or the individual responsible for the engagement quality control review; and
- (c) Transitional measures will be applied, as necessary, and discussed with those charged with governance.

400.73 A1 Examples of such transitional measures include:

- Having a professional accountant review the audit or non-assurance work as appropriate.
- Having a professional accountant, who is not a member of the firm expressing the opinion on the financial statements, perform a review that is equivalent to an engagement quality control review.
- Engaging another firm to evaluate the results of the non-assurance service or having another firm re-perform the

CODE OF ETHICS

non-assurance service to the extent necessary to enable the other firm to take responsibility for the service.

- R400.74** The firm might have completed a significant amount of work on the audit prior to the effective date of the merger or acquisition and might be able to complete the remaining audit procedures within a short period of time. In such circumstances, if those charged with governance request the firm to complete the audit while continuing with an interest or relationship identified in paragraph 400.70 A1, the firm shall only do so if it:
- (a) Has evaluated the level of the threat and discussed the results with those charged with governance;
 - (b) Complies with the requirements of paragraph R400.73(a) to (c); and
 - (c) Ceases to be the auditor no later than the date that the audit report is issued.

If Objectivity Remains Compromised

- R400.75** Even if all the requirements of paragraphs R400.71 to R400.74 could be met, the firm shall determine whether the circumstances identified in paragraph 400.70 A1 create a threat that cannot be addressed such that objectivity would be compromised. If so, the firm shall cease to be the auditor.

Documentation

- R400.76** The firm shall document:
- (a) Any interests or relationships identified in paragraph 400.70 A1 that will not be ended by the effective date of the merger or acquisition and the reasons why they will not be ended;
 - (b) The transitional measures applied;
 - (c) The results of the discussion with those charged with governance; and
 - (d) The reasons why the previous and current interests and relationships do not create a threat such that objectivity would be compromised.

CODE OF ETHICS

Breach of an Independence Provision for Audit and Review Engagements

When a Firm Identifies a Breach

R400.80 Subject to the eligibility requirements of the auditor mentioned under Section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013, if a firm concludes that a breach of a requirement in this Part has occurred, the firm shall:

- (a) End, suspend or eliminate the interest or relationship that created the breach and address the consequences of the breach;
- (b) Consider whether any legal or regulatory requirements apply to the breach and, if so:
 - (i) Comply with those requirements; and
- (c) Promptly communicate the breach in accordance with its policies and procedures to:
 - (i) The engagement partner;
 - (ii) Those with responsibility for the policies and procedures relating to independence;
 - (iii) Other relevant personnel in the firm and, where appropriate, the network; and
 - (iv) Those subject to the independence requirements in Part 4A who need to take appropriate action;
- (d) Evaluate the significance of the breach and its impact on the firm's objectivity and ability to issue an audit report; and
- (e) Depending on the significance of the breach, determine:
 - (i) Whether to end the audit engagement; or
 - (ii) Whether it is possible to take action that satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the breach and whether such action can be taken and is appropriate in the circumstances.

CODE OF ETHICS

In making this determination, the firm shall exercise professional judgment and take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that the firm's objectivity would be compromised, and therefore, the firm would be unable to issue an audit report.

- 400.80 A1 A breach of a provision of this Part might occur despite the firm having policies and procedures designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that independence is maintained. It might be necessary to end the audit engagement because of the breach.
- 400.80 A2 The significance and impact of a breach on the firm's objectivity and ability to issue an audit report will depend on factors such as:
- The nature and duration of the breach.
 - The number and nature of any previous breaches with respect to the current audit engagement.
 - Whether an audit team member had knowledge of the interest or relationship that created the breach.
 - Whether the individual who created the breach is an audit team member or another individual for whom there are independence requirements.
 - If the breach relates to an audit team member, the role of that individual.
 - If the breach was created by providing a professional service, the impact of that service, if any, on the accounting records or the amounts recorded in the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.
 - The extent of the self-interest, advocacy, intimidation or other threats created by the breach.
- 400.80 A3 Depending upon the significance of the breach, examples of actions that the firm might consider to address the breach satisfactorily include:
- Removing the relevant individual from the audit team.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Using different individuals to conduct an additional review of the affected audit work or to re-perform that work to the extent necessary.
- Recommending that the audit client engage another firm to review or re-perform the affected audit work to the extent necessary.
- If the breach relates to a non-assurance service that affects the accounting records or an amount recorded in the financial statements, engaging another firm to evaluate the results of the non-assurance service or having another firm re-perform the non- assurance service to the extent necessary to enable the other firm to take responsibility for the service.

R400.81 If the firm determines that action cannot be taken to address the consequences of the breach satisfactorily, the firm shall inform those charged with governance as soon as possible and take the steps necessary to end the audit engagement in compliance with any applicable legal or regulatory requirements.

R400.82 If the firm determines that action can be taken to address the consequences of the breach satisfactorily, the firm shall discuss with those charged with governance:

- (a) The significance of the breach, including its nature and duration;
- (b) How the breach occurred and how it was identified;
- (c) The action proposed or taken and why the action will satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach and enable the firm to issue an audit report;
- (d) The conclusion that, in the firm's professional judgment, objectivity has not been compromised and the rationale for that conclusion; and
- (e) Any steps proposed or taken by the firm to reduce or avoid the risk of further breaches occurring.

Such discussion shall take place as soon as possible unless an

CODE OF ETHICS

alternative timing is specified by those charged with governance for reporting less significant breaches.

Communication of Breaches to Those Charged with Governance

400.83 A1 Paragraphs R300.9 and R300.10 set out requirements with respect to communicating with those charged with governance.

R400.84 With respect to breaches, the firm shall communicate in writing to those charged with governance:

- (a) All matters discussed in accordance with paragraph R400.82 and obtain the concurrence of those charged with governance that action can be, or has been, taken to satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach; and
- (b) A description of:
 - (i) The firm's policies and procedures relevant to the breach designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that independence is maintained; and
 - (ii) Any steps that the firm has taken, or proposes to take, to reduce or avoid the risk of further breaches occurring.

R400.85 If those charged with governance do not concur that the action proposed by the firm in accordance with paragraph R400.80(e)(ii) satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the breach, the firm shall take the steps necessary to end the audit engagement in accordance with paragraph R400.81.

Breaches Before the Previous Audit Report Was Issued

R400.86 If the breach occurred prior to the issuance of the previous audit report, the firm shall comply with the provisions of Part 4A in evaluating the significance of the breach and its impact on the firm's objectivity and its ability to issue an audit report in the current period.

R400.87 The firm shall also:

- (a) Consider the impact of the breach, if any, on the firm's objectivity in relation to any previously issued audit

CODE OF ETHICS

reports, and the possibility of withdrawing such audit reports; and

- (b) Discuss the matter with those charged with governance.

Documentation

R400.88 In complying with the requirements in paragraphs R400.80 to R400.87, the firm shall document:

- (a) The breach;
- (b) The actions taken;
- (c) The key decisions made;
- (d) All the matters discussed with those charged with governance; and
- (e) Any discussions with a professional or regulatory body or oversight authority.

R400.89 If the firm continues with the audit engagement, it shall document:

- (a) The conclusion that, in the firm's professional judgment, objectivity has not been compromised; and
- (b) The rationale for why the action taken satisfactorily addressed the consequences of the breach so that the firm could issue an audit report.

SECTION 410 FEES

Introduction

- 410.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 410.2 The nature and level of fees or other types of remuneration might create a self-interest or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Fees – Relative Size

All Audit Clients

- 410.3 A1 When the total fees generated from an audit client by the firm expressing the audit opinion represent a large proportion of the total fees of that firm, the dependence on that client and concern about losing the client create a self-interest or intimidation threat.
- 410.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The operating structure of the firm.
 - Whether the firm is well established or new.
 - The significance of the client qualitatively and/or quantitatively to the firm.
- 410.3 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest or intimidation threat is increasing the client base in the firm to reduce dependence on the audit client.
- 410.3 A4 A self-interest or intimidation threat is also created when the fees generated by a firm from an audit client represent a large proportion of the revenue of one partner or one office of the firm.

CODE OF ETHICS

410.3 A5 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The significance of the client qualitatively and/or quantitatively to the partner or office.
- The extent to which the compensation of the partner, or the partners in the office, is dependent upon the fees generated from the client.

410.3 A6 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such self-interest or intimidation threats include:

- Increasing the client base of the partner or the office to reduce dependence on the audit client.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who did not take part in the audit engagement review the work.

R410.4 Where for two consecutive years, the total gross annual professional fees ("total fees) from the audit client and its related entities represent more than 15% of the total fees received by the firm expressing the opinion on the financial statements of the client, the firm shall:

- (a) Disclose to those charged with governance of the audit client the fact that for two consecutive years, the total of such fees represents more than 15% of the total fees received by the firm.

Provided that no such ceiling on the total fees of the Firm would be applicable where such fees does not exceed five lakhs of rupees in respect of a firm including fees received by the firm for other services rendered through the medium of a different firm or firms in which such member or firm may be a partner or proprietor.

Provided further that no such ceiling on the total fees of a Firm would be applicable in the case of audit of government Companies, public undertakings, nationalised banks, public financial institutions or where appointments of auditors are made by the Government; and

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b)** Discuss whether either of the following actions might be a safeguard to address the threat created by the total fees for two consecutive years received by the firm from the client, and if so, apply it:
 - (i)** Prior to the audit opinion being issued on the third year's financial statements, a professional accountant, who is not a member of the firm expressing the opinion on the financial statements, performs an engagement quality control review of that engagement; or a professional body performs a review of that engagement that is equivalent to an engagement quality control review ("a pre-issuance review"); or
 - (ii)** After the audit opinion on the third year's financial statements has been issued, and before the audit opinion being issued on the fourth year's financial statements, a professional accountant, who is not a member of the firm expressing the opinion on the financial statements, or a professional body performs a review of the second year's audit that is equivalent to an engagement quality control review ("a post-issuance review").

R410.5 When the total fees for two consecutive years described in paragraph R410.4 significantly exceed 15%, the firm shall determine whether the level of the threat is such that a post-issuance review would not reduce the threat to an acceptable level. If so, the firm shall have a pre-issuance review performed.

R410.6 If the fees for two consecutive years described in paragraph R410.4 continue to exceed 15%, the firm shall each year thereafter:

- (a)** Disclose to and discuss with those charged with governance the matters set out in paragraph R410.4; and
- (b)** Comply with paragraphs R410.4(b) and R410.5.

Fees – Overdue

410.7 A1 A self-interest threat might be created if a significant part of fees

CODE OF ETHICS

is not paid before the audit report for the following year is issued. It is generally expected that the firm will require payment of such fees before such audit report is issued. The requirements and application material set out in Section 511 with respect to loans and guarantees might also apply to situations where such unpaid fees exist.

410.7 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Obtaining partial payment of overdue fees.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who did not take part in the audit engagement review the work performed.

R410.8 When a significant part of fees due from an audit client remains unpaid for a long time, the firm shall determine:

- (a) Whether the overdue fees might be equivalent to a loan to the client; and
- (b) Whether it is appropriate for the firm to be re-appointed or continue the audit engagement.

Contingent Fees

R410.9 The fees which are based on a percentage of profits or which are contingent upon the findings, or results of such work, is not allowed except in cases which are permitted under Regulation 192 of The Chartered Accountants Regulations, 1988, given as under:-

- (a) in the case of a receiver or a liquidator, the fees may be based on a percentage of the realisation or disbursement of the assets;
- (b) in the case of an auditor of a co-operative society, the fees may be based on a percentage of the paid-up capital or the working capital or the gross or net income or profits;
- (c) in the case of a valuer for the purposes of direct taxes and duties, the fees may be based on a percentage of the value of the property valued.

CODE OF ETHICS

- (d) in the case of certain management consultancy services as may be decided by the resolution of the Council from time to time, the fees may be based on percentage basis which may be contingent upon the findings, or results of such work;
- (e) in the case of certain fund raising services, the fees may be based on a percentage of the fund raised;
- (f) in the case of debt recovery services, the fees may be based on a percentage of the debt recovered;
- (g) in the case of services related to cost optimisation, the fees may be based on a percentage of the benefit derived; and
- (h) any other service or audit as may be decided by the Council.

The Council, pursuant to authority vested under clause (h) mentioned above, has in the following circumstances, permitted charging of fee based on percentage of profits or contingent upon the findings, or results of such work in the following circumstances:-:

- Charging of Fees by Members enrolled as Insolvency professional rendered either individually or as an entity under Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016 and rules made thereunder.
- Rendering Non-assurance services to non-audit clients

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 411

COMPENSATION AND EVALUATION POLICIES

Introduction

- 411.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 411.2 A firm's evaluation or compensation policies might create a self-interest threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 411.3 A1 `When an audit team member for a particular audit client is evaluated on or compensated for selling non-assurance services to that audit client, the level of the self-interest threat will depend on:
- (a) What proportion of the compensation or evaluation is based on the sale of such services;
 - (b) The role of the individual on the audit team; and
 - (c) Whether the sale of such non-assurance services influences promotion decisions.
- 411.3 A2 Examples of actions that might eliminate such a self-interest threat include:
- Revising the compensation plan or evaluation process for that individual.
 - Removing that individual from the audit team.
- 411.3 A3 `An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the audit team member.
- R411.4 A firm shall not evaluate or compensate a key audit partner based on that partner's success in selling non-assurance

CODE OF ETHICS

services to the partner's audit client. This requirement does not preclude normal profit-sharing arrangements between partners of a firm.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 420

GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

Introduction

- 420.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 420.2 Accepting gifts and hospitality from an audit client might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out a specific requirement and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirement and Application Material

- R420.3** A firm, network firm or an audit team member shall not accept gifts and hospitality from an audit client, unless the value is trivial and inconsequential.
- 420.3 A1 Where a firm, network firm or audit team member is offering or accepting an inducement to or from an audit client, the requirements and application material set out in Section 340 apply and non-compliance with these requirements might create threats to independence.
- 420.3 A2 The requirements set out in Section 340 relating to offering or accepting inducements do not allow a firm, network firm or audit team member to accept gifts and hospitality where the intent is to improperly influence behaviour even if the value is trivial and inconsequential.

SECTION 430

ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION

Introduction

- 430.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 430.2 When litigation with an audit client occurs, or appears likely, self-interest and intimidation threats are created. This section sets out specific application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Application Material

General

- 430.3 A1 The relationship between client management and audit team members must be characterized by complete candor and full disclosure regarding all aspects of a client's operations. Adversarial positions might result from actual or threatened litigation between an audit client and the firm, a network firm or an audit team member. Such adversarial positions might affect management's willingness to make complete disclosures and create self-interest and intimidation threats.
- 430.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The materiality of the litigation.
 - Whether the litigation relates to a prior audit engagement.
- 430.3 A3 If the litigation involves an audit team member, an example of an action that might eliminate such self-interest and intimidation threats is removing that individual from the audit team.
- 430.3 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such self-interest and intimidation threats is to have an appropriate reviewer review the work performed.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 510 FINANCIAL INTERESTS

Introduction

- 510.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 510.2 Holding a financial interest in an audit client might create a self-interest threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 510.3 A1 A financial interest might be held directly or indirectly through an intermediary such as a collective investment vehicle, an estate or a trust. When a beneficial owner has control over the intermediary or ability to influence its investment decisions, the Code defines that financial interest to be direct. Conversely, when a beneficial owner has no control over the intermediary or ability to influence its investment decisions, the Code defines that financial interest to be indirect.
- 510.3 A2 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a financial interest. In determining whether such an interest is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.
- 510.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-interest threat created by holding a financial interest in an audit client include:
- The role of the individual holding the financial interest.
 - Whether the financial interest is direct or indirect.
 - The materiality of the financial interest.

Financial Interests Held by the Firm, a Network Firm, Audit Team Members and Others

CODE OF ETHICS

R510.4 Subject to paragraph R510.5, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the audit client shall not be held by:

- (a) The firm or a network firm;
- (b) An audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family
- (c) Any other partner in the office in which an engagement partner practices in connection with the audit engagement, or any of that other partner's immediate family; or
- (d) Any other partner or managerial employee who provides non-audit services to the audit client, except for any whose involvement is minimal, or any of that individual's immediate family.

It may be noted that if the audit client is a statutory audit client under Companies Act, 2013, in accordance with Section 141 (3)(d) (i) of the Companies Act, 2013, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) or his relatives shall not hold any security of or interest in such Company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company. However, the relative (who is not otherwise covered as immediate family under any of the clauses specified in 510.4) may hold security or interest in the company of face value not exceeding rupees one lakh, or such other sum as may be prescribed from time to time;

510.4 A1 The office in which the engagement partner practices in connection with an audit engagement is not necessarily the office to which that partner is assigned. When the engagement partner is located in a different office from that of the other audit team members, professional judgment is needed to determine the office in which the partner practices in connection with the engagement.

R510.5 As an exception to paragraph R510.4, an immediate family member identified in subparagraphs R510.4 (c) or (d) may hold a direct or material indirect financial interest in an audit client,

CODE OF ETHICS

provided that:

- (a) The family member received the financial interest because of employment rights, for example through pension or share option plans, and, when necessary, the firm addresses the threat created by the financial interest; and
- (b) The family member disposes of or forfeits the financial interest as soon as practicable when the family member has or obtains the right to do so, or in the case of a stock option, when the family member obtains the right to exercise the option

The above is subject to any additional restrictions applicable to a relative under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable.

Financial Interests in an Entity Controlling an Audit Client

R510.6 When an entity has a controlling interest in an audit client and the client is material to the entity, neither the firm, nor a network firm, nor an audit team member, nor any of that individual's immediate family shall hold a direct or material indirect financial interest in that entity.

Where the audit client is subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, firm, individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner or his relatives are additionally restricted from holding any security of or interest in the holding company. The relative (who is not otherwise covered as immediate family) may hold security or interest in the company of face value not exceeding rupees one lakh or such other sum as may be prescribed from time to time.

Financial Interests Held as Trustee

R510.7 Paragraph R510.4 shall also apply to a financial interest in an audit client held in a trust for which the firm, network firm or individual acts as trustee, unless:

- (a) None of the following is a beneficiary of the trust: the trustee, the audit team member or any of that individual's immediate family, the firm or a network firm;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b) The interest in the audit client held by the trust is not material to the trust;
- (c) The trust is not able to exercise significant influence over the audit client; and
- (d) None of the following can significantly influence any investment decision involving a financial interest in the audit client: the trustee, the audit team member or any of that individual's immediate family, the firm or a network firm.

Financial Interests in Common with the Audit Client

- R510.8(a)** A firm, or a network firm, or an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not hold a financial interest in an entity when an audit client also has a financial interest in that entity, unless:
- (i) The financial interests are immaterial to the firm, the network firm, the audit team member and that individual's immediate family member and the audit client, as applicable; or
 - (ii) The audit client cannot exercise significant influence over the entity.
- (b) Before an individual who has a financial interest described in paragraph R510.8(a) can become an audit team member, the individual or that individual's immediate family member shall either:
- (i) Dispose of the interest; or
 - (ii) Dispose of enough of the interest so that the remaining interest is no longer material.

Financial Interests Received Unintentionally

- R510.9** If a firm, a network firm or a partner or employee of the firm or a network firm, or any of that individual's immediate family, receives a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an audit client by way of an inheritance, gift, as a result of a merger or in similar circumstances and the interest

CODE OF ETHICS

would not otherwise be permitted to be held under this section, then:

- (a) If the interest is received by the firm or a network firm, or an audit team member or any of that individual's immediate family, the financial interest shall be disposed of immediately, or enough of an indirect financial interest shall be disposed of so that the remaining interest is no longer material; or
- (b) (i) If the interest is received by an individual who is not an audit team member, or by any of that individual's immediate family, the financial interest shall be disposed of as soon as possible, or enough of an indirect financial interest shall be disposed of so that the remaining interest is no longer material; and
(ii) Pending the disposal of the financial interest, when necessary the firm shall address the threat created.

The above is subject to additional restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable.

Financial Interests – Other Circumstances

Immediate Family

- 510.10 A1 A self-interest, familiarity, or intimidation threat might be created if an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family, or the firm or a network firm has a financial interest in an entity when a director or officer or controlling owner of the audit client is also known to have a financial interest in that entity.
- 510.10 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
 - The role of the individual on the audit team.
 - Whether ownership of the entity is closely or widely held.
 - Whether the interest allows the investor to control or significantly influence the entity.
 - The materiality of the financial interest.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 510.10 A3 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity, or intimidation threat is removing the audit team member with the financial interest from the audit team.
- 510.10 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the audit team member.

Close Family

- 510.10 A5 A self-interest threat might be created if an audit team member knows that a close family member has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the audit client.
- 510.10 A6 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:-The nature of the relationship between the audit team member and the close family member.
- Whether the financial interest is direct or indirect.
 - The materiality of the financial interest to the close family member.
- 510.10 A7 Examples of actions that might eliminate such a self-interest threat include:
- Having the close family member dispose, as soon as practicable, of all of the financial interest or dispose of enough of an indirect financial interest so that the remaining interest is no longer material.
 - Removing the individual from the audit team.
- 510.10 A8 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the audit team member.
- 510.10A8A The above is subject to additional restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable.

Other Individuals

- 510.10 A9 A self-interest threat might be created if an audit team member knows that a financial interest in the audit client is held by individuals such as:
- Partners and professional employees of the firm or

CODE OF ETHICS

network firm, apart from those who are specifically not permitted to hold such financial interests by paragraph R510.4, or their immediate family members.

- Individuals with a close personal relationship with an audit team member.

510.10 A10 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:

- The firm's organizational, operating and reporting structure.
- The nature of the relationship between the individual and the audit team member.

510.10 A11 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest threat is removing the audit team member with the personal relationship from the audit team.

510.10 A12 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Excluding the audit team member from any significant decision-making concerning the audit engagement.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the audit team member.

Retirement Benefit Plan of a Firm or Network Firm

510.10 A13 A self-interest threat might be created if a retirement benefit plan of a firm or a network firm holds a direct or material indirect financial interest in an audit client.

SECTION 511

LOANS AND GUARANTEES

Introduction

- 511.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 511.2 A loan or a guarantee of a loan with an audit client might create a self-interest threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 511.3 A1 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a loan or guarantee. In determining whether such a loan or guarantee is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.

Loans and Guarantees with an Audit Client

- R511.4** A firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual’s immediate family shall not make or guarantee a loan to an audit client unless the loan or guarantee is immaterial to:

- (a) The firm, the network firm or the individual making the loan or guarantee, as applicable; and
- (b) The client.

The above is subject to the Council guidelines on indebtedness, issued from time to time and the additional restrictions under the Companies Act, 2013, where applicable.

In accordance with Section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013 read with Rule 10 of Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014 a firm, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) or relatives shall not be indebted in excess

CODE OF ETHICS

of Rs 5 lakhs (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time) to the Company, its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company or provide guarantee or any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person in excess of rupees one lakh (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time), to the Company its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company.

Loans and Guarantees with an Audit Client that is a Bank or Similar Institution

R511.5 A firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not accept a loan, or a guarantee of a loan, from an audit client that is a bank or a similar institution unless the loan or guarantee is made under normal lending procedures, terms and conditions,

511.5 A1 Examples of loans include mortgages, bank overdrafts, car loans, and credit card balances.

511.5 A2 Even if a firm or network firm receives a loan from an audit client that is a bank or similar institution under normal lending procedures, terms and conditions, the loan might create a self-interest threat if it is material to the audit client or firm receiving the loan.

511.5 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having the work reviewed by an appropriate reviewer, who is not an audit team member, from a network firm that is not a beneficiary of the loan.

511.5 A4 The above is subject to the Council guidelines on indebtedness, issued from time to time and additional restrictions under the Companies Act, 2013, as amended from time to time, where applicable.

In accordance with Section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013, read with Rule 10 of Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014 a firm, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) or relatives shall not be indebted in excess of Rs 5 lakhs (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time) to the Company, its subsidiary, or its holding or

CODE OF ETHICS

associate company or subsidiary of such holding company or provide guarantee or any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person in excess of rupees one lakh (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time), to the Company its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company.

Deposits or Brokerage Accounts

R511.6 A firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not have deposits or a brokerage account with an audit client that is a bank, broker or similar institution, unless the deposit or account is held under normal commercial terms.

The above is subject to the Council guidelines on indebtedness, issued from time to time and additional restrictions under the Companies Act, 2013, as amended from time to time, where applicable.

In accordance with Section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013, read with Rule 10 of Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, a firm, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) or relatives shall not be indebted in excess of Rs 5 lakhs (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time), to the Company, its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company with respect to a brokerage account.

Loans and Guarantees with an Audit Client that is Not a Bank or Similar Institution

R511.7 A firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not accept a loan from, or have a borrowing guaranteed by, an audit client that is not a bank or similar institution, unless the loan or guarantee is immaterial to:

- (a) The firm, the network firm, or the individual receiving the loan or guarantee, as applicable; and
- (b) The client.

The above is subject to the Council guidelines on

CODE OF ETHICS

indebtedness, issued from time to time and additional restrictions under the Companies Act, 2013, where applicable.

In accordance with Companies Act, 2013, a firm, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) or relatives shall not be indebted in excess of Rs 5 lakhs (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time) to the Company, its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company or provide guarantee or any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person in excess of rupees one lakh (or such other limit as may be prescribed from time to time), to the Company its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company.

SECTION 520

BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS

Introduction

- 520.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 520.2 A close business relationship with an audit client or its management might create a self-interest or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 520.3 A1 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a financial interest and the “significance” of a business relationship. In determining whether such a financial interest is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.
- 520.3 A2 Examples of a close business relationship arising from a commercial relationship or common financial interest include:
- Having a financial interest in a joint venture with either the client or a controlling owner, director or officer or other individual who performs senior managerial activities for that client.
 - Arrangements to combine one or more services or products of the firm or a network firm with one or more services or products of the client and to market the package with reference to both parties.

CODE OF ETHICS

Firm, Network Firm, Audit Team Member or Immediate Family Business Relationships

R520.4 A firm, a network firm or an audit team member shall not have a close business relationship with an audit client or its management unless any financial interest is immaterial and the business relationship is insignificant to the client or its management and the firm, the network firm or the audit team member, as applicable.

The above is subject to additional restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable. As per section 141(3)(e) of Companies Act, 2013 read with Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, a firm, an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) shall not, whether directly or indirectly, have business relationship with the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or subsidiary of such holding company or associate company of such nature as may be prescribed.

The term "business relationship" shall be construed as any transaction entered into for a commercial purpose, except -

- (i) commercial transactions which are in the nature of professional services permitted to be rendered by an auditor or audit firm under the Companies Act, 2013 and the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949 or any other Act and the rules or the regulations made under those Acts;
- (ii) commercial transactions which are in the ordinary course of business of the company at arm's length price - like sale of products or services to the auditor, as customer, in the ordinary course of business, by companies engaged in the business of telecommunications, airlines, hospitals, hotels and such other similar businesses

520.4 A1 A self-interest or intimidation threat might be created if there is a close business relationship between the audit client or its management and the immediate family of an audit team member.

Common Interests in Closely-Held Entities

R520.5 A firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not have a business relationship involving the holding of an interest in a closely-held entity when an audit client or a director or officer of the client, or any group thereof, also holds an interest in that entity, unless:

- (a) The business relationship is insignificant to the firm, the network firm, or the individual as applicable, and the client;
- (b) The financial interest is immaterial to the investor or group of investors; and
- (c) The financial interest does not give the investor, or group of investors, the ability to control the closely-held entity.

Buying Goods or Services

520.6 A1 In addition to the provisions of paragraph R520.4, it is reiterated that the purchase of goods and services from an audit client by a firm, a network firm, an audit team member, or any of that individual's immediate family does not usually create a threat to independence if the transaction is in the normal course of business and at arm's length. However, such transactions might be of such a nature and magnitude that they create a self-interest threat.

520.6 A2 Subject to the provisions of Companies Act, 2013, examples of actions that might eliminate such a self-interest threat include:

- Eliminating or reducing the magnitude of the transaction.
- Removing the individual from the audit team.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 521

FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS

Introduction

- 521.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 521.2 Family or personal relationships with client personnel might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 521.3 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat might be created by family and personal relationships between an audit team member and a director or officer or, depending on their role, certain employees of the audit client.
- 521.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The individual's responsibilities on the audit team.
 - The role of the family member or other individual within the client, and the closeness of the relationship.

Immediate Family of an Audit Team Member

- 521.4 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is created when an immediate family member of an audit team member is an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the client's financial position, financial performance or cash flows.
- 521.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- The position held by the immediate family member.
 - The role of the audit team member.
- 521.4 A3 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the audit team.
- 521.4 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the audit team so that the audit team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the immediate family member.
- R521.5** An individual shall not participate as an audit team member when any of that individual's immediate family:
- (a) Is a director or officer of the audit client;
 - (b) Is an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion; or
 - (c) Was in such position during any period covered by the engagement or the financial statements.

Additionally, under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, as per Sec 141 (3)(f) of the Act an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or the firm is ineligible from being appointed as an auditor of a Company where relative of an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) is a director or is in the employment of the company as a director or key managerial personnel as defined under the Companies Act, 2013.

Close Family of an Audit Team Member

- 521.6 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is created when a close family member of an audit team member is:
- (a) A director or officer of the audit client; or
 - (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence

CODE OF ETHICS

over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

- 521.6 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The nature of the relationship between the audit team member and the close family member.
 - The position held by the close family member.
 - The role of the audit team member.
- 521.6 A3 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the audit team.
- 521.6 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the audit team so that the audit team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the close family member.
- 521.6 A5 Additionally, under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, as per Sec 141 (3)(f) of the Act an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or the firm is ineligible from being appointed as an auditor of a Company where relative of an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) is a director or is in the employment of the company as a director or key managerial personnel as defined under the Companies Act, 2013.

Other Close Relationships of an Audit Team Member

- R521.7** An audit team member shall consult in accordance with firm policies and procedures if the audit team member has a close relationship with an individual who is not an immediate or close family member, but who is:
- (a)** A director or officer of the audit client; or
 - (b)** An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or

CODE OF ETHICS

the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

- 521.7 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat created by such a relationship include:
- The nature of the relationship between the individual and the audit team member.
 - The position the individual holds with the client.
 - The role of the audit team member.
- 521.7 A2 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the audit team.
- 521.7 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the audit team so that the audit team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the individual with whom the audit team member has a close relationship.
- 521.7 A4 Additionally, under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, as per Sec 141 (3)(f) of the Act an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or the firm is ineligible from being appointed as an auditor of a Company where relative of an individual practitioner, sole proprietor or partner (as the case may be) is a director or is in the employment of the company as a director or key managerial personnel as defined under the Companies Act, 2013

Relationships of Partners and Employees of the Firm

- R521.8** Partners and employees of the firm shall consult in accordance with firm policies and procedures if they are aware of a personal or family relationship between:
- (a) A partner or employee of the firm or network firm who is not an audit team member; and
 - (b) A director or officer of the audit client or an employee of

CODE OF ETHICS

the audit client in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

521.8 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat created by such a relationship include:

- The nature of the relationship between the partner or employee of the firm and the director or officer or employee of the client.
- The degree of interaction of the partner or employee of the firm with the audit team.
- The position of the partner or employee within the firm.
- The position the individual holds with the client.

521.8 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threats include:

- Structuring the partner's or employee's responsibilities to reduce any potential influence over the audit engagement.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the relevant audit work performed.

SECTION 522

RECENT SERVICE WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT

Introduction

- 522.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 522.2 If an audit team member has recently served as a director or officer, or employee of the audit client, a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat might be created. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Service During Period Covered by the Audit Report

- R522.3** The audit team shall not include an individual who, during the period covered by the audit report:
- (a) Had served as a director or officer of the audit client; or
 - (b) Was an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

Service Prior to Period Covered by the Audit Report

- 522.4 A1 A self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat might be created if, before the period covered by the audit report, an audit team member:
- (a) Had served as a director or officer of the audit client; or
 - (b) Was an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

For example, a threat would be created if a decision made or work performed by the individual in the prior period, while

CODE OF ETHICS

employed by the client, is to be evaluated in the current period as part of the current audit engagement.

522.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The position the individual held with the client.
- The length of time since the individual left the client.
- The role of the audit team member.

522.4 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work performed by the audit team member.

SECTION 523

SERVING AS A DIRECTOR OR OFFICER OF AN AUDIT CLIENT

Introduction

- 523.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 523.2 Serving as a director or officer of an audit client creates self-review and self-interest threats. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Service as Director or Officer

- R523.3** A partner or employee of the firm or a network firm shall not serve as a director or officer of an audit client of the firm.
- Further, as per Section 141(3) (b) of the Companies Act, 2013, an officer or employee of the company or a person who is a partner, or who is in the employment, of an officer or employee of the company, shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company.

Service as Company Secretary

- R523.4** A partner or employee of the firm or a network firm shall not serve as Company Secretary for an audit client of the firm, unless:
- (a) This practice is specifically permitted under local law, professional rules or practice;
 - (b) Management makes all relevant decisions; and
 - (c) The duties and activities performed are limited to those of a routine and administrative nature, such as preparing minutes and maintaining statutory returns.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 523.4 A1 Duties of Company Secretary might range from: administrative duties (such as personnel management and the maintenance of company records and registers) to duties as diverse as ensuring that the company complies with regulations or providing advice on corporate governance matters. Usually this position is seen to imply a close association with the entity. Therefore, a threat is created if a partner or employee of the firm or a network firm serves as Company Secretary for an audit client. (More information on providing non-assurance services to an audit client is set out in Section 600, *Provision of Non-assurance Services to an Audit Client*.)

SECTION 524

EMPLOYMENT WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT

Introduction

- 524.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 524.2 Employment relationships with an audit client might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 524.3 A1 A familiarity or intimidation threat might be created if any of the following individuals have been an audit team member or partner of the firm or a network firm:
- A director or officer of the audit client.
 - An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

Former Partner or Audit Team Member Restrictions

- R524.4** The firm shall ensure that no significant connection remains between the firm or a network firm and:
- (a) A former partner who has joined an audit client of the firm; or
 - (b) A former audit team member who has joined the audit client, if either has joined the audit client as:
 - (i) A director or officer; or
 - (ii) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's

CODE OF ETHICS

accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

A significant connection remains between the firm or a network firm and the individual, unless:

- (a) The individual is not entitled to any benefits or payments from the firm or network firm that are not made in accordance with fixed pre-determined arrangements;
- (b) Any amount owed to the individual is not material to the firm or the network firm; and
- (c) The individual does not continue to participate or appear to participate in the firm's or the network firm's business or professional activities.

524.4 A1 Even if the requirements of paragraph R524.4 are met, a familiarity or intimidation threat might still be created.

524.4 A2 A familiarity or intimidation threat might also be created if a former partner of the firm or network firm has joined an entity in one of the positions described in paragraph 524.3 A1 and the entity subsequently becomes an audit client of the firm.

524.4 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The position the individual has taken at the client.
- Any involvement the individual will have with the audit team.
- The length of time since the individual was an audit team member or partner of the firm or network firm.
- The former position of the individual within the audit team, firm or network firm. An example is whether the individual was responsible for maintaining regular contact with the client's management or those charged with governance.

524.4 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such familiarity or intimidation threats include:

- Modifying the audit plan.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Assigning to the audit team individuals who have sufficient experience relative to the individual who has joined the client.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the former audit team member.

Audit Team Members Entering Employment with a Client

R524.5 A firm or network firm shall have policies and procedures that require audit team members to notify the firm or network firm when entering employment negotiations with an audit client.

524.5 A1 A self-interest threat is created when an audit team member participates in the audit engagement while knowing that the audit team member will, or might, join the client at some time in the future.

524.5 A2 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest threat is removing the individual from the audit team.

524.5 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review any significant judgments made by that individual while on the team.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

Key Audit Partners

R524.6 Subject to paragraph R524.8, if an individual who was a key audit partner with respect to an audit client that is a public interest entity joins the client as:

- (a) A director or officer; or
- (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion,

independence is compromised unless, subsequent to the individual ceasing to be a key audit partner:

- (i) The audit client has issued audited financial statements covering a period of not less than twelve months; and

CODE OF ETHICS

- (ii) The individual was not an audit team member with respect to the audit of those financial statements.

Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or Equivalent) of the Firm

R524.7 Subject to paragraph R524.8, if an individual who was the Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent) of the firm joins an audit client that is a public interest entity as:

- (a) A director or officer; or
- (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion,

independence is compromised, unless twelve months have passed since the individual was the Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent) of the firm.

Business Combinations

R524.8 As an exception to paragraphs R524.6 and R524.7, independence is not compromised if the circumstances set out in those paragraphs arise as a result of a business combination and:

- (a) The position was not taken in contemplation of the business combination;
- (b) Any benefits or payments due to the former partner from the firm or a network firm have been settled in full, unless made in accordance with fixed pre-determined arrangements and any amount owed to the partner is not material to the firm or network firm as applicable;
- (c) The former partner does not continue to participate or appear to participate in the firm's or network firm's business or professional activities; and
- (d) The firm discusses the former partner's position held with the audit client with those charged with governance.

SECTION 525

TEMPORARY PERSONNEL ASSIGNMENTS

Introduction

- 525.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 525.2 The loan of personnel to an audit client might create a self-review, advocacy or familiarity threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 525.3 A1 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats created by the loan of personnel by a firm or a network firm to an audit client include:
- Conducting an additional review of the work performed by the loaned personnel might address a self-review threat.
 - Not including the loaned personnel as an audit team member might address a familiarity or advocacy threat.
 - Not giving the loaned personnel audit responsibility for any function or activity that the personnel performed during the loaned personnel assignment might address a self-review threat.
- 525.3 A2 When familiarity and advocacy threats are created by the loan of personnel by a firm or a network firm to an audit client, such that the firm or the network firm becomes too closely aligned with the views and interests of management, safeguards are often not available.
- R525.4** A firm or network firm shall not loan personnel to an audit client unless:
- (a) Such assistance is provided only for a short period of time;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b)** The personnel are not involved in providing non-assurance services that would not be permitted under Section 600 and its subsections; and
- (c)** The personnel do not assume management responsibilities and the audit client is responsible for directing and supervising the activities of the personnel.

SECTION 540

LONG ASSOCIATION OF PERSONNEL (INCLUDING PARTNER ROTATION) WITH AN AUDIT CLIENT

Introduction

- 540.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 540.2 When an individual is involved in an audit engagement over a long period of time, familiarity and self-interest threats might be created. This section sets out requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 540.3 A1 Although an understanding of an audit client and its environment is fundamental to audit quality, a familiarity threat might be created as a result of an individual's long association as an audit team member with:
- (a) The audit client and its operations;
 - (b) The audit client's senior management; or
 - (c) The financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion or the financial information which forms the basis of the financial statements.
- 540.3 A2 A self-interest threat might be created as a result of an individual's concern about losing a longstanding client or an interest in maintaining a close personal relationship with a member of senior management or those charged with governance. Such a threat might influence the individual's judgment inappropriately.
- 540.3 A3 Factors that are relevant to evaluating the level of such familiarity or self-interest threats include:

CODE OF ETHICS

(a) In relation to the individual:

- The overall length of the individual's relationship with the client, including if such relationship existed while the individual was at a prior firm.
- How long the individual has been an engagement team member, and the nature of the roles performed.
- The extent to which the work of the individual is directed, reviewed and supervised by more senior personnel.
- The extent to which the individual, due to the individual's seniority, has the ability to influence the outcome of the audit, for example, by making key decisions or directing the work of other engagement team members.
- The closeness of the individual's personal relationship with senior management or those charged with governance.
- The nature, frequency and extent of the interaction between the individual and senior management or those charged with governance.

(b) In relation to the audit client:

- The nature or complexity of the client's accounting and financial reporting issues and whether they have changed.
- Whether there have been any recent changes in senior management or those charged with governance.
- Whether there have been any structural changes in the client's organization which impact the nature, frequency and extent of interactions the individual might have with senior management or those charged with governance.

540.3 A4 The combination of two or more factors might increase or reduce the level of the threats. For example, familiarity threats created over time by the increasingly close relationship between an individual and a member of the client's senior management would be reduced by the departure of that member of the client's senior management.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 540.3 A5 An example of an action that might eliminate the familiarity and self-interest threats created by an individual being involved in an audit engagement over a long period of time would be rotating the individual off the audit team.
- 540.3 A6 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such familiarity or self-interest threats include:
- Changing the role of the individual on the audit team or the nature and extent of the tasks the individual performs.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer who was not an audit team member review the work of the individual.
 - Performing regular independent internal or external quality reviews of the engagement.

R540.4 If a firm decides that the level of the threats created can only be addressed by rotating the individual off the audit team, the firm shall determine an appropriate period during which the individual shall not:

- (a) Be a member of the engagement team for the audit engagement;
- (b) Provide quality control for the audit engagement; or
- (c) Exert direct influence on the outcome of the audit engagement.

The period shall be of sufficient duration to allow the familiarity and self-interest threats to be addressed. In the case of a public interest entity, paragraphs R540.5 to R540.20 also apply.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

R540.5 Subject to paragraphs R540.7 to R540.9, in respect of an audit of a public interest entity, an individual shall not act in any of the following roles, or a combination of such roles, for a period of more than seven cumulative years (the “time-on” period):

- (a) The engagement partner;
- (b) The individual appointed as responsible for the engagement quality control review; or

CODE OF ETHICS

(c) Any other key audit partner role.

After the time-on period, the individual shall serve a “cooling-off” period in accordance with the provisions in paragraphs R540.11 to R540.19.

R540.6 In calculating the time-on period, the count of years shall not be restarted unless the individual ceases to act in any one of the roles in paragraph R540.5(a) to (c) for a minimum period. This minimum period is a consecutive period equal to at least the cooling-off period determined in accordance with paragraphs R540.11 to R540.13 as applicable to the role in which the individual served in the year immediately before ceasing such involvement.

540.6 A1 For example, an individual who served as engagement partner for four years followed by three years off can only act thereafter as a key audit partner on the same audit engagement for three further years (making a total of seven cumulative years). Thereafter, that individual is required to cool off in accordance with paragraph R540.14.

R540.7 As an exception to paragraph R540.5, key audit partners whose continuity is especially important to audit quality may, in rare cases due to unforeseen circumstances outside the firm’s control, and with the concurrence of those charged with governance, be permitted to serve an additional year as a key audit partner as long as the threat to independence can be eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level.

540.7 A1 For example, a key audit partner may remain in that role on the audit team for up to one additional year in circumstances where, due to unforeseen events, a required rotation was not possible, as might be the case due to serious illness of the intended engagement partner. In such circumstances, this will involve the firm discussing with those charged with governance the reasons why the planned rotation cannot take place and the need for any safeguards to reduce any threat created.

R540.8 If an audit client becomes a public interest entity, a firm shall take into account the length of time an individual has served the audit client as a key audit partner before the client becomes a

CODE OF ETHICS

public interest entity in determining the timing of the rotation. If the individual has served the audit client as a key audit partner for a period of five cumulative years or less when the client becomes a public interest entity, the number of years the individual may continue to serve the client in that capacity before rotating off the engagement is seven years less the number of years already served. As an exception to paragraph R540.5, if the individual has served the audit client as a key audit partner for a period of six or more cumulative years when the client becomes a public interest entity, the individual may continue to serve in that capacity with the concurrence of those charged with governance for a maximum of two additional years before rotating off the engagement.

R540.9 When a firm has only a few people with the necessary knowledge and experience to serve as a key audit partner on the audit of a public interest entity, rotation of key audit partners might not be possible. In these circumstances the firm should apply other safeguards to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards would include involving an additional professional accountant who was not otherwise associated with the audit team to review the work done or otherwise advise as necessary. This individual could be someone from outside the firm or someone within the firm who was not otherwise associated with the audit team.

Other Considerations Relating to the Time-on Period

R540.10 In evaluating the threats created by an individual's long association with an audit engagement, a firm shall give particular consideration to the roles undertaken and the length of an individual's association with the audit engagement prior to the individual becoming a key audit partner.

540.10 A1 There might be situations where the firm, in applying the conceptual framework, concludes that it is not appropriate for an individual who is a key audit partner to continue in that role even though the length of time served as a key audit partner is less than seven years.

CODE OF ETHICS

Cooling-off Period

- R540.11** If the individual acted as the engagement partner for seven cumulative years, the cooling-off period shall be five consecutive years.
- R540.12** Where the individual has been appointed as responsible for the engagement quality control review and has acted in that capacity for seven cumulative years, the cooling-off period shall be three consecutive years.
- R540.13** If the individual has acted as a key audit partner other than in the capacities set out in paragraphs R540.11 and R540.12 for seven cumulative years, the cooling-off period shall be two consecutive years.

Service in a combination of key audit partner roles

- R540.14** If the individual acted in a combination of key audit partner roles and served as the engagement partner for four or more cumulative years, the cooling-off period shall be five consecutive years.
- R540.15** Subject to paragraph R540.16(a), if the individual acted in a combination of key audit partner roles and served as the key audit partner responsible for the engagement quality control review for four or more cumulative years, the cooling-off period shall be three consecutive years.
- R540.16** If an individual has acted in a combination of engagement partner and engagement quality control review roles for four or more cumulative years during the time-on period, the cooling-off period shall:
- (a)** As an exception to paragraph R540.15, be five consecutive years where the individual has been the engagement partner for three or more years; or
 - (b)** Be three consecutive years in the case of any other combination.
- R540.17** If the individual acted in any combination of key audit partner roles other than those addressed in paragraphs R540.14 to R540.16, the cooling-off period shall be two consecutive years.

Service at a Prior Firm

R540.18 In determining the number of years that an individual has been a key audit partner as set out in paragraph R540.5, the length of the relationship shall, where relevant, include time while the individual was a key audit partner on that engagement at a prior firm.

Restrictions on Activities During the Cooling-off Period

R540.20 For the duration of the relevant cooling-off period, the individual shall not:

- (a) Be an engagement team member or provide quality control for the audit engagement;
- (b) Consult with the engagement team or the client regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events affecting the audit engagement (other than discussions with the engagement team limited to work undertaken or conclusions reached in the last year of the individual's time-on period where this remains relevant to the audit);
- (c) Be responsible for leading or coordinating the professional services provided by the firm or a network firm to the audit client, or overseeing the relationship of the firm or a network firm with the audit client; or
- (d) Undertake any other role or activity not referred to above with respect to the audit client, including the provision of non-assurance services that would result in the individual:
 - (i) Having significant or frequent interaction with senior management or those charged with governance; or
 - (ii) Exerting direct influence on the outcome of the audit engagement.

540.20 A1 The provisions of paragraph R540.20 are not intended to prevent the individual from assuming a leadership role in the firm or a network firm, such as that of the Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent).

CODE OF ETHICS

Provisions applicable to audit clients under other regulations

- 540.21 If rotation of partners for an audit client has been stipulated vide any industry/Sector specific provisions contained in a statute, the said provisions shall be applicable with regard to such industry/Sector.
- 540.22 In case of an audit client being a company, in accordance with the Section 139 of the Companies, Act, 2013, the members of a company may resolve to provide that in the Firm appointed by them, the auditing partner and its team shall be rotated at such intervals as may be resolved by the members. If they resolve to provide shorter time on period, such shorter period will prevail.
- R540.23 Additional rotation requirements are prescribed by certain regulators such as Reserve Bank of India for certain NBFCs⁵, National Housing Board for Housing Finance Companies⁶, and

5 In accordance with the Non-Banking Financial Companies – Corporate Governance (Reserve Bank) Directions, 2015, issued by the Reserve Bank of India vide Notification No.DNBR. 019/CGM (CDS)-2015 dated April 10, 2015, the rotation requirements are as follows:

Extent of the Directions

- (i) These Directions shall apply to every non-deposit accepting Non-Banking Financial Company with asset size of Rs.500 crore and above (NBFCs-ND-SI), as per its last audited balance sheet, and all deposit accepting Non-Banking Financial Companies (NBFCs-D), henceforth called as Applicable NBFCs.
- (ii) The provisions of these Directions shall not apply to a Systemically Important Core Investment Company as defined in the Core Investment Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 2011.

Rotation of partners of the Statutory Auditors Audit Firm

All Applicable NBFCs shall rotate the partner/s of the Chartered Accountant firm conducting the audit, every three years so that same partner does not conduct audit of the company continuously for more than a period of three years. However, the partner so rotated will be eligible for conducting the audit of the NBFC after an interval of three years, if the NBFC, so decides. NBFCs shall incorporate appropriate terms in the letter of appointment of the firm of auditors and ensure its compliance.

⁶In accordance with the “Housing Finance Companies –Corporate Governance (National Housing Bank) Directions, 2016 Directions issued vide Notification No.

CODE OF ETHICS

any other Regulator, subject to amendments as may be made from time to time.

NHB.HFC.CG-DIR.1/MD&CEO/2016 dated 9 February 2017, the rotation requirements are as follows:

Extent of the Directions

These Directions shall apply to every non-public deposit accepting Housing Finance Company (HFC) with assets size of 50 crore and above, as per the last audited balance sheet, and all public deposit accepting / holding Housing Finance Companies (HFCs), henceforth called Applicable HFCs.

Rotation of partners of the Statutory Auditors Audit Firm

Rotation of partners of the Statutory Auditors Audit Firm All Applicable HFCs shall rotate the partner/s of the Chartered Accountant firm conducting the audit, every three years so that same partner does not conduct audit of the company continuously for more than a period of three years. However, the partner so rotated will be eligible for conducting the audit of the HFC after an interval of three years, if the HFC, so decides. HFCs shall incorporate appropriate terms in the letter of appointment of the firm of auditors and ensure its compliance.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 550

AUDITOR ROTATION

Introduction

Auditor rotation requirements prescribed under various regulations are set out below. This is not an exhaustive list. Members shall comply with requirements stipulated by *any* other regulator not covered hereunder. Further, these regulations are subject to amendments, as may be made from time to time.

Auditor rotation requirements under the Companies Act, 2013

In accordance with Section 139(2) of the Companies Act, 2013, "*no listed company or a company belonging to such class or classes of companies as may be prescribed⁷, shall appoint or re-appoint—*

- (a) *an individual as auditor for more than one term of five consecutive years; and*
- (b) *an audit firm as auditor for more than two terms of five consecutive years:*

⁸*Provided that—*

- (i) *an individual auditor who has completed his term under clause (a) shall not be eligible for re-appointment as auditor in the same company for five years from the completion of his term;*

⁷ For the purposes of sub-section (2) of section 139, the class of companies shall mean the following classes of companies excluding one person companies and small companies:-

- (a) all unlisted public companies having paid up share capital of rupees ten crore or more;
- (b) all private limited companies having paid up share capital of rupees fifty crore or more
- (c) all companies having paid up share capital of below threshold limit mentioned in (a) and (b) above, but having public borrowings from financial institutions, banks or public deposits of rupees fifty crores or more.

⁸ In case of Specified IFSC Private Company- All provisos to sub section (2) of section 139 shall not apply. - Notification Dated 4th January 2017.

CODE OF ETHICS

- (ii) *an audit firm which has completed its term under clause (b), shall not be eligible for re-appointment as auditor in the same company for five years from the completion of such term:*

Provided further that as on the date of appointment no audit firm having a common partner or partners to the other audit firm, whose tenure has expired in a company immediately preceding the financial year, shall be appointed as auditor of the same company for a period of five years:

Provided also that every company, existing on or before the commencement of this Act which is required to comply with the provisions of this sub-section, shall comply with requirements of this sub-section within a period which shall not be later than the date of the first annual general meeting of the company held, within the period specified under sub-section (1) of section 96, after three years from the date of commencement of this Act.

Provided also that, nothing contained in this sub-section shall prejudice the right of the company to remove an auditor or the right of the auditor to resign from such office of the company.”

For detailed provisions, please refer to the complete Section 139 of the Companies Act 2013.

Auditor rotation requirements for stock brokers

In accordance with the SEBI circular SEBI/HO/MIRSD/MIRSD2/CIR/P/2016/95 issued dated 26 September 2016, the prescribed rotation requirements are as under:

“5.3. *No stock broker shall appoint or re-appoint—*

- (a) *an individual as statutory auditor for more than one term of five consecutive years;*
- (b) *an audit firm as statutory auditor for more than two terms of five consecutive years:*

Provided that—

- 5.4. *An individual statutory auditor who has completed his term under clause 5.3 (a) above shall not be eligible for re-appointment as statutory auditor in the same stock broker for five years from the completion of his term.*

CODE OF ETHICS

- 5.5. *An statutory audit firm which has completed its term under clause 5.3 (b) above, shall not be eligible for re-appointment as statutory auditor in the same stock broker for five years from the completion of such term:*
- 5.6. *Provided further that as on the date of appointment no statutory audit firm having a common partner or partners to the other audit firm, whose tenure has expired in a stock broker immediately preceding the financial year, shall be appointed as statutory auditor of the same stock broker for a period of five years:*
- 5.7. *The above provisions shall be applicable from April 01, 2017”*

Auditor rotation requirements for Mutual funds

In accordance with Para B(2) of the SEBI circular SEBI/HO/IMD/DF2/CIR/P/2017/125 issued dated 30 November 2017, the prescribed rotation requirements are as under:

“With respect to appointment of auditors in terms of Regulation 55 (1) of SEBI (MFs) Regulation, 1996, it has been decided that:

- i No mutual fund shall appoint an auditor for more than 2 terms of maximum five consecutive years. Such auditor may be re-appointed after cooling off period of 5 years.*
- ii. Further, during the cooling-off period of five years, the incoming auditor may not include:*
 - a. Any firm that has common partner(s) with the outgoing audit firm*
 - b. Any associate / affiliate firm(s) of the outgoing audit firm which are under the same network of audit firms wherein the term “same network” includes the firms operating or functioning, hitherto or in future, under the same brand name, trade name or common control*
- iii. Existing auditors may be appointed for a maximum of 10 years (including all preceding years for which an auditor has been appointed in terms of Regulation 55 (1) of SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulation, 1996). In this respect, the following may be noted:*
 - a. Auditors who have conducted audit of the Mutual Fund for*

CODE OF ETHICS

less than 9 years (as on date of issuance of this circular) may continue for the residual period of service.

- b. Auditors who have conducted audit of the Mutual Fund for 9 years or more (as on date of issuance of this circular) may continue for a maximum of 1 year from date of issuance of this circular.*
- c. Such auditors shall subsequently be eligible for re-appointment after a cooling-off period of 5 years, in terms of Para B (2) (i) and Para B (2) (ii) above.”*

Statutory Central Auditors (SCA) rotation requirements for Indian Private Sector Banks/ All Foreign Banks operating in India

In accordance with the RBI circular DBS.ARS.BC.04/08.91.001/2017-18 issued dated 27 July 2017, *“an audit firm, subject to its fulfilling the prescribed eligibility norms will be allowed to continue as the SCA for a particular bank for a period of four years and, thereafter, after completing its four year tenure in a particular private/foreign bank, will not be eligible for appointment as SCA of the same bank for a period of six years”.*

Auditor rotation requirements for appointed under Employees’ provident funds scheme, 1952

As per paragraph 24(c) of the Employees’ provident funds scheme, 1952, *“the same auditors should not be appointed for two consecutive years and not more than two years in a block of six years”.*

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 600

PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO AN AUDIT CLIENT

Introduction

- 600.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent, and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 600.2 Firms and network firms might provide a range of non-assurance services to their audit clients, consistent with their skills and expertise. Providing non-assurance services to audit clients might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles and threats to independence.
- 600.3 This section sets out requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence when providing non- assurance services to audit clients. The subsections that follow set out specific requirements and application material relevant when a firm or network firm provides certain non-assurance services to audit clients and indicate the types of threats that might be created as a result. Some of the subsections include requirements that expressly prohibit a firm or network firm from providing certain services to an audit client in certain circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R600.4** Before a firm or a network firm accepts an engagement to provide a non-assurance service to an audit client, the firm shall determine whether providing such a service might create a threat to independence.
- 600.4 A1 The requirements and application material in this section assist the firm in analyzing certain types of non-assurance services

CODE OF ETHICS

and the related threats that might be created if a firm or network firm provides non-assurance services to an audit client.

Additionally, Section 141(3) (i) of the Companies Act, 2013 provides that *“a person who, directly or indirectly, renders any service referred to in section 144 to the company or its holding company or its subsidiary company shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company”*

As per Section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013, *“an auditor appointed under the Companies Act 2013 shall provide to the company only such other services as are approved by the Board of Directors or the audit committee, as the case may be, but which shall not include any of the following services (whether such services are rendered directly or indirectly to the company or its holding company or subsidiary company), namely:—*

- (a) *accounting and book keeping services;*
- (b) *internal audit;*
- (c) *design and implementation of any financial information system;*
- (d) *actuarial services;*
- (e) *investment advisory services;*
- (f) *investment banking services;*
- (g) *rendering of outsourced financial services;*
- (h) *management services; and*
- (i) *any other kind of services as may be prescribed:*

Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-section, the term “directly or indirectly” shall include rendering of services by the auditor,—

- (i) *in case of auditor being an individual, either himself or through his relative or any other person connected or associated with such individual or through any other entity, whatsoever, in which such individual has significant influence or control, or whose name or trade mark or brand is used by such individual;*

CODE OF ETHICS

- (ii) *in case of auditor being a firm, either itself or through any of its partners or through its parent, subsidiary or associate entity or through any other entity, whatsoever, in which the firm or any partner of the firm has significant influence or control, or whose name or trade mark or brand is used by the firm or any of its partners.”*

600.4 A2 New business practices, the evolution of financial markets and changes in information technology, are among the developments that make it impossible to draw up an all-inclusive list of non-assurance services that might be provided to an audit client. As a result, the Code does not include an exhaustive list of all non-assurance services that might be provided to an audit client.

Evaluating Threats

600.5 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats created by providing a non-assurance service to an audit client include:

- The nature, scope and purpose of the service.
- The degree of reliance that will be placed on the outcome of the service as part of the audit.
- The legal and regulatory environment in which the service is provided.
- Whether the outcome of the service will affect matters reflected in the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion, and, if so:
 - The extent to which the outcome of the service will have a material effect on the financial statements.
 - The degree of subjectivity involved in determining the appropriate amounts or treatment for those matters reflected in the financial statements.
- The level of expertise of the client's management and employees with respect to the type of service provided.

CODE OF ETHICS

- The extent of the client's involvement in determining significant matters of judgment.
- The nature and extent of the impact of the service, if any, on the systems that generate information that forms a significant part of the client's:
 - Accounting records or financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.
 - Internal controls over financial reporting.
- Whether the client is a public interest entity. For example, providing a non-assurance service to an audit client that is a public interest entity might be perceived to result in a higher level of a threat.

600.5 A2 Subsections 601 to 610 include examples of additional factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats created by providing the non-assurance services set out in those subsections.

Materiality in Relation to Financial Statements

600.5 A3 Subsections 601 to 610 refer to materiality in relation to an audit client's financial statements. The concept of materiality in relation to an audit is addressed in SA 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and in relation to a review in SRE 2400 (Revised), *Engagements to Review Historical Financial Statements*. The determination of materiality involves the exercise of professional judgment and is impacted by both quantitative and qualitative factors. It is also affected by perceptions of the financial information needs of users.

Multiple Non-assurance Services Provided to the Same Audit Client

600.5 A4 A firm or network firm might provide multiple non-assurance services to an audit client. In these circumstances the consideration of the combined effect of threats created by providing those services is relevant to the firm's evaluation of threats.

Addressing Threats

600.6 A1 Subsections 601 to 610 include examples of actions, including

CODE OF ETHICS

safeguards, that might address threats to independence created by providing those non-assurance services when threats are not at an acceptable level. Those examples are not exhaustive.

- 600.6 A2 Some of the subsections include requirements that expressly prohibit a firm or network firm from providing certain services to an audit client in certain circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.
- 600.6 A3 Paragraph 120.10 A2 includes a description of safeguards. In relation to providing non- assurance services to audit clients, safeguards are actions, individually or in combination, that the firm takes that effectively reduce threats to independence to an acceptable level. In some situations, when a threat is created by providing a non-assurance service to an audit client, safeguards might not be available. In such situations, the application of the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 requires the firm to decline or end the non-assurance service or the audit engagement.

Prohibition on Assuming Management Responsibilities

- R600.7** A firm or a network firm shall not assume a management responsibility for an audit client. Further, under Section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, the restriction also applies to the holding company and subsidiary company of such audit client.
- 600.7 A1 Management responsibilities involve controlling, leading and directing an entity, including making decisions regarding the acquisition, deployment and control of human, financial, technological, physical and intangible resources.
- 600.7 A2 Providing a non-assurance service to an audit client creates self-review and self-interest threats if the firm or network firm assumes a management responsibility when performing the service. Assuming a management responsibility also creates a familiarity threat and might create an advocacy threat because the firm or network firm becomes too closely aligned with the views and interests of management.
- 600.7 A3 Determining whether an activity is a management responsibility

CODE OF ETHICS

depends on the circumstances and requires the exercise of professional judgment. Examples of activities that would be considered a management responsibility include:

- Setting policies and strategic direction.
- Hiring or dismissing employees.
- Directing and taking responsibility for the actions of employees in relation to the employees' work for the entity.
- Authorizing transactions.
- Controlling or managing bank accounts or investments.
- Deciding which recommendations of the firm or network firm or other third parties to implement.
- Reporting to those charged with governance on behalf of management.
- Taking responsibility for:
 - The preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
 - Designing, implementing, monitoring or maintaining internal control.

600.7 A4 Providing advice and recommendations to assist the management of an audit client in discharging its responsibilities is not assuming a management responsibility. (Ref: Para. R600.7 to 600.7 A3).

R600.8 Subject to applicable restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, to avoid assuming a management responsibility when providing any non-assurance service to an audit client, the firm shall be satisfied that client management makes all judgments and decisions that are the proper responsibility of management. This includes ensuring that the client's management:

- (a) Designates an individual who possesses suitable skill, knowledge and experience to be responsible at all times for the client's decisions and to oversee the services.

CODE OF ETHICS

Such an individual, preferably within senior management, would understand:

- (i) The objectives, nature and results of the services; and
- (ii) The respective client and firm or network firm responsibilities.

However, the individual is not required to possess the expertise to perform or re-perform the services.

- (b) Provides oversight of the services and evaluates the adequacy of the results of the service performed for the client's purpose.
- (c) Accepts responsibility for the actions, if any, to be taken arising from the results of the services.

Providing Non-Assurance Services to an Audit Client that Later Becomes a Public Interest Entity

R600.9 A non-assurance service provided, either currently or previously, by a firm or a network firm to an audit client compromises the firm's independence when the client becomes a public interest entity unless:

- (a) The previous non-assurance service complies with the provisions of this section that relate to audit clients that are not public interest entities;
- (b) Non-assurance services currently in progress that are not permitted under this section for audit clients that are public interest entities are ended before, or as soon as practicable after, the client becomes a public interest entity; and
- (c) The firm addresses threats that are created that are not at an acceptable level.

Considerations for Certain Related Entities

R600.10 This section includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from assuming management responsibilities or providing certain non-assurance services to audit clients. As an

CODE OF ETHICS

exception to those requirements, a firm or network firm may assume management responsibilities or provide certain non-assurance services that would otherwise be prohibited to the following related entities of the client on whose financial statements the firm will express an opinion:

- (a) An entity that has direct or indirect control over the client (other than an engagement to which Companies Act, 2013 applies);
- (b) An entity with a direct financial interest in the client if that entity has significant influence over the client and the interest in the client is material to such entity; or
- (c) An entity which is under common control with the client, provided that all of the following conditions are met:
 - (i) The firm or a network firm does not express an opinion on the financial statements of the related entity;
 - (ii) The firm or a network firm does not assume a management responsibility, directly or indirectly, for the entity on whose financial statements the firm will express an opinion;
 - (iii) The services do not create a self-review threat because the results of the services will not be subject to audit procedures; and
 - (iv) The firm addresses other threats created by providing such services that are not at an acceptable level.

SUBSECTION 601 – ACCOUNTING AND BOOKKEEPING SERVICES

Introduction

- 601.1 Providing accounting and bookkeeping services to an audit client might create a self-review threat.
- 601.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in

CODE OF ETHICS

paragraphs 600.1 to R600.8 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing an audit client with accounting and bookkeeping services. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain accounting and bookkeeping services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

Requirements and Application Material

601.3 A1 Accounting and bookkeeping services comprise a broad range of services including:

- Preparing accounting records and financial statements.
- Recording transactions.
- Payroll services.

601.3 A2 Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. These responsibilities include:

- Determining accounting policies and the accounting treatment in accordance with those policies.
- Preparing or changing source documents or originating data, in electronic or other form, evidencing the occurrence of a transaction. Examples include:
 - Purchase orders
 - Payroll time records
 - Customer orders
- Originating or changing journal entries.
- Determining or approving the account classifications of transactions

601.3 A3 The audit process necessitates dialogue between the firm and the management of the audit client, which might involve:

CODE OF ETHICS

- Applying accounting standards or policies and financial statement disclosure requirements.
- Assessing the appropriateness of financial and accounting control and the methods used in determining the stated amounts of assets and liabilities.
- Proposing adjusting journal entries.

These activities are considered to be a normal part of the audit process and do not usually create threats as long as the client is responsible for making decisions in the preparation of accounting records and financial statements.

601.3 A4 Similarly, the client might request technical assistance on matters such as resolving account reconciliation problems or analyzing and accumulating information for regulatory reporting. In addition, the client might request technical advice on accounting issues such as the conversion of existing financial statements from one financial reporting framework to another. Examples include:

- Complying with group accounting policies.
- Transitioning to a different financial reporting framework such as International Financial Reporting Standards.

Such services do not usually create threats provided neither the firm nor network firm assumes a management responsibility for the client.

Accounting and Bookkeeping Services that are Routine or Mechanical

601.4 A1 Accounting and bookkeeping services that are routine or mechanical in nature require little or no professional judgment. Some examples of these services are:

- Preparing payroll calculations or reports based on client-originated data for approval and payment by the client.
- Recording recurring transactions for which amounts are easily determinable from source documents or originating data, such as a utility bill where the client has

CODE OF ETHICS

determined or approved the appropriate account classification.

- Calculating depreciation on fixed assets when the client determines the accounting policy and estimates of useful life and residual values.
- Posting transactions coded by the client to the general ledger.
- Posting client-approved entries to the trial balance.
- Preparing financial statements based on information in the client-approved trial balance and preparing related notes based on client-approved records.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

R601.5 Subject to paragraph R601.6, a firm or a network firm shall not provide to an audit client that is a public interest entity accounting and bookkeeping services including preparing financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion or financial information which forms the basis of such financial statements.

R601.6 Subject to paragraph R601.7, as an exception to paragraph R601.5, a firm or network firm may provide accounting and bookkeeping services of a routine or mechanical nature for related entities of an audit client that is a public interest entity if the personnel providing the services are not audit team members and:

- (a) The related entities for which the service is provided are collectively immaterial to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion; or
- (b) The service relates to matters that are collectively immaterial to the financial statements of the division or related entity.

R601.7 As per the provisions of the Guidance Note on Independence of Auditors, it is not permitted to do the book keeping work of the auditee client. Further, under Companies Act, 2013, where

applicable, the restriction also applies to the subsidiary company or holding Company of the audit client.

SUBSECTION 602 – ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES

Introduction

- 602.1 Providing administrative services to an audit client does not usually create a threat.
- 602.2 In addition to the specific application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing administrative services.

Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 602.3 A1 Administrative services involve assisting clients with their routine or mechanical tasks within the normal course of operations. Such services require little to no professional judgment and are clerical in nature.
- 602.3 A2 Examples of administrative services include:
- Word processing services.
 - Preparing administrative or statutory forms for client approval.
 - Submitting such forms as instructed by the client.
 - Monitoring statutory filing dates, and advising an audit client of those dates.

SUBSECTION 603 – VALUATION SERVICES

Introduction

- 603.1 Providing valuation services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.
- 603.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing valuation services to an audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit

CODE OF ETHICS

firms and network firms from providing certain valuation services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 603.3 A1 A valuation comprises the making of assumptions with regard to future developments, the application of appropriate methodologies and techniques, and the combination of both to compute a certain value, or range of values, for an asset, a liability or for a business as a whole.
- 603.3 A2 If a firm or network firm is requested to perform a valuation to assist an audit client with its tax reporting obligations or for tax planning purposes and the results of the valuation will not have a direct effect on the financial statements, the application material set out in paragraphs 604.9 A1 to 604.9 A5, relating to such services, applies.
- 603.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by providing valuation services to an audit client include:
- The use and purpose of the valuation report.
 - Whether the valuation report will be made public.
 - The extent of the client's involvement in determining and approving the valuation methodology and other significant matters of judgment.
 - The degree of subjectivity inherent in the item for valuations involving standard or established methodologies.
 - Whether the valuation will have a material effect on the financial statements.
 - The extent and clarity of the disclosures related to the valuation in the financial statements.
 - The degree of dependence on future events of a nature that might create significant volatility inherent in the amounts involved.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 603.3 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats include:
- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address self-review or advocacy threats.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or service performed might address a self-review threat.

Audit Clients that are Not Public Interest Entities

- R603.4** A firm or a network firm shall not provide a valuation service to an audit client that is not a public interest entity if:
- (a) The valuation involves a significant degree of subjectivity; and
 - (b) The valuation will have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

- 603.4 A1 Certain valuations do not involve a significant degree of subjectivity. This is likely to be the case when the underlying assumptions are either established by law or regulation, or are widely accepted and when the techniques and methodologies to be used are based on generally accepted standards or prescribed by law or regulation. In such circumstances, the results of a valuation performed by two or more parties are not likely to be materially different.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

- R603.5** A firm or a network firm shall not provide a valuation service to an audit client that is a public interest entity if the valuation service would have a material effect, individually or in the aggregate, on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

SUBSECTION 604 – TAX SERVICES

Introduction

- 604.1 Providing tax services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.

CODE OF ETHICS

604.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing a tax service to an audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain tax services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

604.3 A1 Tax services comprise a broad range of services, including activities such as:

- Tax return preparation.
- Tax calculations for the purpose of preparing the accounting entries.
- Tax planning and other tax advisory services.
- Tax services involving valuations.
- Assistance in the resolution of tax disputes.

While this subsection deals with each type of tax service listed above under separate headings, in practice, the activities involved in providing tax services are often inter-related.

604.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats created by providing any tax service to an audit client include:

- The particular characteristics of the engagement.
- The level of tax expertise of the client's employees.
- The system by which the tax authorities assess and administer the tax in question and the role of the firm or network firm in that process.
- The complexity of the relevant tax regime and the degree of judgment necessary in applying it.

Tax Return Preparation

All Audit Clients

- 604.4 A1 Providing tax return preparation services does not usually create a threat.
- 604.4 A2 Tax return preparation services involve:
- Assisting clients with their tax reporting obligations by drafting and compiling information, including the amount of tax due (usually on standardized forms) required to be submitted to the applicable tax authorities.
 - Advising on the tax return treatment of past transactions and responding on behalf of the audit client to the tax authorities' requests for additional information and analysis (for example, providing explanations of and technical support for the approach being taken).
- 604.4 A3 Tax return preparation services are usually based on historical information and principally involve analysis and presentation of such historical information under existing tax law, including precedents and established practice. Further, the tax returns are subject to whatever review or approval process the tax authority considers appropriate.

Tax Calculations for the Purpose of Preparing Accounting Entries

All Audit Clients

- 604.5 A1 Preparing calculations of current and deferred tax liabilities (or assets) for an audit client for the purpose of preparing accounting entries that will be subsequently audited by the firm creates a self-review threat.
- 604.5 A2 In addition to the factors in paragraph 604.3 A2, a factor that is relevant in evaluating the level of the threat created when preparing such calculations for an audit client is whether the calculation might have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

Audit Clients that are Not Public Interest Entities

- 604.5 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-review threat when the audit client is not a public interest

CODE OF ETHICS

entity include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or service performed.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

R604.6 A firm or a network firm shall not prepare tax calculations of current and deferred tax liabilities (or assets) for an audit client that is a public interest entity for the purpose of preparing accounting entries that are material to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion. However, the professional accountant may review the tax calculation prepared by the client and provide recommendations.

604.6 A1 The examples of actions that might be safeguards in paragraph 604.5 A3 to address self-review threats are also applicable when preparing tax calculations of current and deferred tax liabilities (or assets) to an audit client that is a public interest entity that are immaterial to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

Tax Planning and Other Tax Advisory Services

All Audit Clients

604.7 A1 Providing tax planning and other tax advisory services might create a self-review or advocacy threat.

604.7 A2 Tax planning or other tax advisory services comprise a broad range of services, such as advising the client how to structure its affairs in a tax efficient manner or advising on the application of a new tax law or regulation.

604.7 A3 In addition to paragraph 604.3 A2, factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by providing tax planning and other tax advisory services to audit clients include:

- The degree of subjectivity involved in determining the appropriate treatment for the tax advice in the financial statements.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Whether the tax treatment is supported by a private ruling or has otherwise been cleared by the tax authority before the preparation of the financial statements.
For example, whether the advice provided as a result of the tax planning and other tax advisory services:
 - Is clearly supported by a tax authority or other precedent.
 - Is an established practice.
 - Has a basis in tax law that is likely to prevail.
- The extent to which the outcome of the tax advice will have a material effect on the financial statements.
- Whether the effectiveness of the tax advice depends on the accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements and there is doubt as to the appropriateness of the accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework.

604.7 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address self-review or advocacy threats.
- Having an appropriate reviewer, who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or service performed might address a self-review threat.
- Obtaining pre-clearance from the tax authorities might address self-review or advocacy threats.

When Effectiveness of Tax Advice Is Dependent on a Particular Accounting Treatment or Presentation

R604.8 A firm or a network firm shall not provide tax planning and other tax advisory services to an audit client when the effectiveness of the tax advice depends on a particular accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements and:

CODE OF ETHICS

- (a) The audit team has reasonable doubt as to the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework; and
- (b) The outcome or consequences of the tax advice will have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

Tax Services Involving Valuations

All Audit Clients

- 604.9 A1 Providing tax valuation services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.
- 604.9 A2 A firm or a network firm might perform a valuation for tax purposes only, where the result of the valuation will not have a direct effect on the financial statements (that is, the financial statements are only affected through accounting entries related to tax). This would not usually create threats if the effect on the financial statements is immaterial or the valuation is subject to external review by a tax authority or similar regulatory authority.
- 604.9 A3 If the valuation that is performed for tax purposes is not subject to an external review and the effect is material to the financial statements, in addition to paragraph 604.3 A2, the following factors are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by providing those services to an audit client:
- The extent to which the valuation methodology is supported by tax law or regulation, other precedent or established practice.
 - The degree of subjectivity inherent in the valuation.
 - The reliability and extent of the underlying data.
- 604.9 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats include:
- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address self-review or advocacy threats.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or service performed might address a self-review threat.
 - Obtaining pre-clearance from the tax authorities might address self-review or advocacy threats.
- 604.9 A5 A firm or network firm might also perform a tax valuation to assist an audit client with its tax reporting obligations or for tax planning purposes where the result of the valuation will have a direct effect on the financial statements. In such situations, the requirements and application material set out in Subsection 603 relating to valuation services apply.

Assistance in the Resolution of Tax Disputes

All Audit Clients

- 604.10 A1 Providing assistance in the resolution of tax disputes to an audit client might create a self- review or advocacy threat.
- 604.10 A2 A tax dispute might reach a point when the tax authorities have notified an audit client that arguments on a particular issue have been rejected and either the tax authority or the client refers the matter for determination in a formal proceeding, for example, before a court.
- 604.10 A3 In addition to paragraph 604.3 A2, factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by assisting an audit client in the resolution of tax disputes include:
- The role management plays in the resolution of the dispute.
 - The extent to which the outcome of the dispute will have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.
 - Whether the advice that was provided is the subject of the tax dispute.
 - The extent to which the matter is supported by tax law or regulation, other precedent, or established practice.
 - Whether the proceedings are conducted in public.

CODE OF ETHICS

604.10 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address self-review or advocacy threats.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or the service performed might address a self-review threat.

Resolution of Tax Matters Involving Acting as An Advocate

R604.11 A firm or a network firm shall not provide tax services that involve assisting in the resolution of tax disputes to an audit client if:

- (a) The services involve acting as an advocate for the audit client before a court in the resolution of a tax matter; and
- (b) The amounts involved are material to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

604.11 A1 Paragraph R604.11 does not preclude a firm or network firm from having a continuing advisory role in relation to the matter that is being heard before a court, for example:

- Responding to specific requests for information.
- Providing factual accounts or testimony about the work performed.
- Assisting the client in analyzing the tax issues related to the matter.

604.11 A2 What constitutes a “Court” depends on how tax proceedings are heard in India.

SUBSECTION 605 – INTERNAL AUDIT SERVICES

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

605.1 A1 Internal audit services involve assisting the audit client in the performance of its internal audit activities. Internal audit

activities might include:

- Monitoring of internal control – reviewing controls, monitoring their operation and recommending improvements to them.
- Examining financial and operating information by:
 - Reviewing the means used to identify, measure, classify and report financial and operating information.
 - Inquiring specifically into individual items including detailed testing of transactions, balances and procedures.
- Reviewing the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of operating activities including non-financial activities of an entity.
- Reviewing compliance with:
 - Laws, regulations and other external requirements.
 - Management policies, directives and other internal requirements.

605.2 A2 The scope and objectives of internal audit activities vary widely and depend on the size and structure of the entity and the requirements of management and those charged with governance.

R605. 3 A statutory auditor of an entity cannot be its internal auditor as it will not be possible for him to give an independent and objective opinion. Further, under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, the restriction also applies to the subsidiary company or holding Company of the audit client.

SUBSECTION 606 – INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SYSTEMS SERVICES

Introduction

606.1 Providing information technology (IT) systems services to an audit client might create a self- review threat.

CODE OF ETHICS

606.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing an IT systems service to an audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain IT systems services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

The provisions stated below are subject to the restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, which prohibit services related to design and implementation of any financial information system to the Company, its holding company and subsidiary company.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

606.3 A1 Services related to IT systems include the design or implementation of hardware or software systems. The IT systems might:

- (a) Aggregate source data;
- (b) Form part of the internal control over financial reporting; or
- (c) Generate information that affects the accounting records or financial statements, including related disclosures.

However, the IT systems might also involve matters that are unrelated to the audit client's accounting records or the internal control over financial reporting or financial statements.

606.3 A2 Paragraph R600.7 precludes a firm or a network firm from assuming a management responsibility. Providing the following IT systems services to an audit client does not usually create a threat as long as personnel of the firm or network firm do not assume a management responsibility:

- (a) Designing or implementing IT systems that are unrelated to internal control over financial reporting;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b) Designing or implementing IT systems that do not generate information forming a significant part of the accounting records or financial statements;
- (c) Implementing “off-the-shelf” accounting or financial information reporting software that was not developed by the firm or network firm, if the customization required to meet the client’s needs is not significant; and
- (d) Evaluating and making recommendations with respect to an IT system designed, implemented or operated by another service provider or the client.

R606.4 When providing IT systems services to an audit client the firm or network firm shall be satisfied that:

- (a) The client acknowledges its responsibility for establishing and monitoring a system of internal controls;
- (b) The client assigns the responsibility to make all management decisions with respect to the design and implementation of the hardware or software system to a competent employee, preferably within senior management;
- (c) The client makes all management decisions with respect to the design and implementation process;
- (d) The client evaluates the adequacy and results of the design and implementation of the system; and
- (e) The client is responsible for operating the system (hardware or software) and for the data it uses or generates.

606.4 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-review threat created by providing IT systems services to an audit client include:

- The nature of the service.
- The nature of IT systems and the extent to which they impact or interact with the client’s accounting records or financial statements.

CODE OF ETHICS

- The degree of reliance that will be placed on the particular IT systems as part of the audit.
- 606.4 A2 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-review threat is using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service.

Audit Clients that are Public Interest Entities

- R606.5** A firm or a network firm shall not provide IT systems services to an audit client that is a public interest entity if the services involve designing or implementing IT systems that:
- (a) Form a significant part of the internal control over financial reporting; or
 - (b) Generate information that is significant to the client's accounting records or financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

SUBSECTION 607 – LITIGATION SUPPORT SERVICES

Introduction

- 607.1 Providing certain litigation support services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.
- 607.2 In addition to the specific application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing a litigation support service to an audit client.

Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 607.3 A1 Litigation support services might include activities such as:
- Assisting with document management and retrieval.
 - Acting as a witness, including an expert witness.
 - Calculating estimated damages or other amounts that might become receivable or payable as the result of litigation or other legal dispute.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 607.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by providing litigation support services to an audit client include:
- The legal and regulatory environment in which the service is provided, for example, whether an expert witness is chosen and appointed by a court.
 - The nature and characteristics of the service.
 - The extent to which the outcome of the litigation support service will have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.
- 607.3 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-review or advocacy threat is using a professional who was not an audit team member to perform the service.
- 607.3 A4 If a firm or a network firm provides a litigation support service to an audit client and the service involves estimating damages or other amounts that affect the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion, the requirements and application material set out in Subsection 603 related to valuation services apply.

SUBSECTION 608 – LEGAL SERVICES

Introduction

- 608.1 Providing legal services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.
- 608.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing a legal service to an audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain legal services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

CODE OF ETHICS

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

608.3 A1 Legal services are defined as any services for which the individual providing the services must either:

- (a) Have the required legal training to practice law; or
- (b) Be admitted to practice law before the courts of India.

Acting in an Advisory Role

608.4 A1 Legal advisory services might include a wide and diversified range of service areas including both corporate and commercial services to audit clients, such as:

- Contract support.
- Supporting an audit client in executing a transaction.
- Mergers and acquisitions.
- Supporting and assisting an audit client's internal legal department.
- Legal due diligence and restructuring.

608.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-review or advocacy threats created by providing legal advisory services to an audit client include:

- The materiality of the specific matter in relation to the client's financial statements.
- The complexity of the legal matter and the degree of judgment necessary to provide the service.

608.4 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address a self-review or advocacy threat.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or the service performed might address a self-review threat.

CODE OF ETHICS

Acting as General Counsel

R608.5 A partner or employee of the firm or the network firm shall not serve as General Counsel for legal affairs of an audit client.

608.5 A1 The position of General Counsel is usually a senior management position with broad responsibility for the legal affairs of a company.

Acting in an Advocacy Role

R608.6 A firm or a network firm shall not act in an advocacy role for an audit client in resolving a dispute or litigation when the amounts involved are material to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

608.6 A1 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address a self-review threat created when acting in an advocacy role for an audit client when the amounts involved are not material to the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion include:

- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or the service performed.

SUBSECTION 609 – RECRUITING SERVICES

Introduction

609.1 Providing recruiting services to an audit client might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat.

609.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing a recruiting service to an

CODE OF ETHICS

audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain types of recruiting services to audit clients in some circumstances because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

609.3 A1 Recruiting services might include activities such as:

- Developing a job description.
- Developing a process for identifying and selecting potential candidates.
- Searching for or seeking out candidates.
- Screening potential candidates for the role by:
 - Reviewing the professional qualifications or competence of applicants and determining their suitability for the position.
 - Undertaking reference checks of prospective candidates.
 - Interviewing and selecting suitable candidates and advising on candidates' competence.
- Determining employment terms and negotiating details, such as salary, hours and other compensation.

609.3 A2 Paragraph R600.7 precludes a firm or a network firm from assuming a management responsibility. Providing the following services does not usually create a threat as long as personnel of the firm or network firm does not assume a management responsibility:

- Reviewing the professional qualifications of a number of applicants and providing advice on their suitability for the position.
- Interviewing candidates and advising on a candidate's competence for financial accounting, administrative or control positions.

CODE OF ETHICS

- R609.4** When a firm or network firm provides recruiting services to an audit client, the firm shall be satisfied that:
- (a) The client assigns the responsibility to make all management decisions with respect to hiring the candidate for the position to a competent employee, preferably within senior management; and
 - (b) The client makes all management decisions with respect to the hiring process, including:
 - Determining the suitability of prospective candidates and selecting suitable candidates for the position.
 - Determining employment terms and negotiating details, such as salary, hours and other compensation.
- 609.5 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threats created by providing recruiting services to an audit client include:
- The nature of the requested assistance.
 - The role of the individual to be recruited.
 - Any conflicts of interest or relationships that might exist between the candidates and the firm providing the advice or service.
- 609.5 A2 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service.

Recruiting Services that are Prohibited

- R609.6** When providing recruiting services to an audit client, the firm or the network firm shall not act as a negotiator on the client's behalf.
- R609.7** A firm or a network firm shall not provide a recruiting service to an audit client if the service relates to:
- (a) Searching for or seeking out candidates; or

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b) Undertaking reference checks of prospective candidates, with respect to the following positions:
- (i) A director or officer of the entity; or
 - (ii) A member of senior management in a position to exert significant influence over the preparation of the client's accounting records or the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

SUBSECTION 610 – CORPORATE FINANCE SERVICES

Introduction

610.1 Providing corporate finance services to an audit client might create a self-review or advocacy threat.

610.2 In addition to the specific requirements and application material in this subsection, the requirements and application material in paragraphs 600.1 to R600.10 are relevant to applying the conceptual framework when providing a corporate finance service to an audit client. This subsection includes requirements that prohibit firms and network firms from providing certain corporate finance services in some circumstances to audit clients because the threats created cannot be addressed by applying safeguards.

The provisions stated below are subject to restrictions under Companies Act, 2013, where applicable, which apply to the Company including its holding company and subsidiary company.

Requirements and Application Material

All Audit Clients

- 610.3 A1 Examples of corporate finance services that might create a self-review or advocacy threat include:
- Assisting an audit client in developing corporate strategies.
 - Identifying possible targets for the audit client to acquire.
 - Advising on disposal transactions.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Assisting in finance raising transactions.
 - Providing structuring advice.
 - Providing advice on the structuring of a corporate finance transaction or on financing arrangements that will directly affect amounts that will be reported in the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.
- 610.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats created by providing corporate finance services to an audit client include:
- The degree of subjectivity involved in determining the appropriate treatment for the outcome or consequences of the corporate finance advice in the financial statements.
 - The extent to which:
 - The outcome of the corporate finance advice will directly affect amounts recorded in the financial statements.
 - The amounts are material to the financial statements.
 - Whether the effectiveness of the corporate finance advice depends on a particular accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements and there is doubt as to the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework.
- 610.3 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address threats include:
- Using professionals who are not audit team members to perform the service might address self-review or advocacy threats.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in providing the service review the audit work or service performed might address a self-review threat.

CODE OF ETHICS

Corporate Finance Services that are Prohibited

- R610.4** A firm or a network firm shall not provide corporate finance services to an audit client that involve promoting, dealing in, or underwriting the audit client's shares.
- R610.5** A Firm or a network Firm shall not provide corporate finance advice to an audit client where the effectiveness of such advice depends on a particular accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion and
- (a) The audit team has reasonable doubt as to the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework; and
 - (b) The outcome or consequences of the corporate finance advice will have a material effect on the financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion.

SECTION 800

REPORTS ON SPECIAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS THAT INCLUDE A RESTRICTION ON USE AND DISTRIBUTION (AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS)

Introduction

- 800.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 800.2 This section sets out certain modifications to Part 4A which are permitted in certain circumstances involving audits of special purpose financial statements where the report includes a restriction on use and distribution. In this section, an engagement to issue a restricted use and distribution report in the circumstances set out in paragraph R800.3 is referred to as an “eligible audit engagement.”

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R800.3** When a firm intends to issue a report on an audit of special purpose financial statements which includes a restriction on use and distribution, the independence requirements set out in Part 4A shall be eligible for the modifications that are permitted by this section, but only if:
- (a) The firm communicates with the intended users of the report regarding the modified independence requirements that are to be applied in providing the service; and
 - (b) The intended users of the report understand the purpose and limitations of the report and explicitly agree to the application of the modifications.
- 800.3 A1 The intended users of the report might obtain an understanding of the purpose and limitations of the report by participating, either directly, or indirectly through a representative who has

CODE OF ETHICS

authority to act for the intended users, in establishing the nature and scope of the engagement. In either case, this participation helps the firm to communicate with intended users about independence matters, including the circumstances that are relevant to applying the conceptual framework. It also allows the firm to obtain the agreement of the intended users to the modified independence requirements.

R800.4 Where the intended users are a class of users who are not specifically identifiable by name at the time the engagement terms are established, the firm shall subsequently make such users aware of the modified independence requirements agreed to by their representative.

800.4 A1 For example, where the intended users are a class of users such as lenders in a syndicated loan arrangement, the firm might describe the modified independence requirements in an engagement letter to the representative of the lenders. The representative might then make the firm's engagement letter available to the members of the group of lenders to meet the requirement for the firm to make such users aware of the modified independence requirements agreed to by the representative.

R800.5 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, any modifications to Part 4A shall be limited to those set out in paragraphs R800.7 to R800.14. The firm shall not apply these modifications when an audit of financial statements is required by law or regulation.

R800.6 If the firm also issues an audit report that does not include a restriction on use and distribution for the same client, the firm shall apply Part 4A to that audit engagement.

Public Interest Entities

R800.7 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, the firm does not need to apply the independence requirements set out in Part 4A that apply only to public interest entity audit engagements.

Related Entities

R800.8 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, references to “audit client” in Part 4A do not need to include its related entities. However, when the audit team knows or has reason to believe that a relationship or circumstance involving a related entity of the client is relevant to the evaluation of the firm’s independence of the client, the audit team shall include that related entity when identifying, evaluating and addressing threats to independence.

Financial Interests, Loans and Guarantees, Close Business Relationships, and Family and Personal Relationships

R800.10 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement:

- (a) The relevant provisions set out in Sections 510, 511, 520, 521, 522, 524 and 525 need apply only to the members of the engagement team, their immediate family members and, where applicable, close family members;
- (b) The firm shall identify, evaluate and address any threats to independence created by interests and relationships, as set out in Sections 510, 511, 520, 521, 522, 524 and 525, between the audit client and the following audit team members:
 - (i) Those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry specific issues, transactions or events; and
 - (ii) Those who provide quality control for the engagement, including those who perform the engagement quality control review; and
- (c) The firm shall evaluate and address any threats that the engagement team has reason to believe are created by interests and relationships between the audit client and others within the firm who can directly influence the outcome of the audit engagement.

800.10 A1 Others within a firm who can directly influence the outcome of the audit engagement include those who recommend the

CODE OF ETHICS

compensation, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight, of the audit engagement partner in connection with the performance of the audit engagement including those at all successively senior levels above the engagement partner through to the individual who is the firm's Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent).

R800.11 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, the firm shall evaluate and address any threats that the engagement team has reason to believe are created by financial interests in the audit client held by individuals, as set out in paragraphs R510.4(c) and (d), R510.5, R510.7 and 510.10 A5 and A9.

R800.12 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, the firm, in applying the provisions set out in paragraphs R510.4(a), R510.6 and R510.7 to interests of the firm, shall not hold a material direct or a material indirect financial interest in the audit client.

Employment with an Audit Client

R800.13 When the firm performs an eligible audit engagement, the firm shall evaluate and address any threats created by any employment relationships as set out in paragraphs 524.3 A1 to 524.5 A3.

Providing Non-Assurance Services

R800.14 If the firm performs an eligible audit engagement and provides a non-assurance service to the audit client, the firm shall comply with Sections 410 to 430 and Section 600, including its subsections, subject to paragraphs R800.7 to R800.9.

PART 4B – INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

	Page
Section 900 Applying the Conceptual Framework to Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements	232
Section 905 Fees	242
Section 906 Gifts and Hospitality	245
Section 907 Actual or Threatened Litigation.....	246
Section 910 Financial Interests.....	247
Section 911 Loans and Guarantees.....	251
Section 920 Business Relationships	253
Section 921 Family and Personal Relationships.....	255
Section 922 Recent Service with an Assurance Client.....	259
Section 923 Serving as a Director or Officer of an Assurance Client	261
Section 924 Employment with an Assurance Client.....	263
Section 940 Long Association of Personnel with an Assurance Client	266
Section 950 Provision of Non-Assurance Services to Assurance Clients Other than Audit and Review Engagement Clients	269
Section 990 Reports that Include a Restriction on Use and Distribution (Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements)	274

PART 4B
INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS
OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

SECTION 900

**APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO
INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER
THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS**

Introduction

General

- 900.1 This Part applies to assurance engagements other than audit and review engagements (referred to as “assurance engagements” in this Part). Examples of such engagements include:
- An audit of specific elements, accounts or items of a financial statement.
 - Performance assurance on a company's key performance indicators.
 - Engagements to issue reports or certificates under the Guidance Note on Reports or Certificates for Special Purposes (Revised 2016) for clients which are not financial statements audit clients.
- 900.2 In this Part, the term “professional accountant” refers to individual professional accountants in public practice and their firms.
- 900.3 SQC 1 requires a firm to establish policies and procedures designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that the firm, its personnel and, where applicable, others subject to independence requirements maintain independence where required by relevant ethics standards. SAEs establish responsibilities for engagement partners and engagement teams at the level of the engagement. The allocation of responsibilities

CODE OF ETHICS

within a firm will depend on its size, structure and organization. Many of the provisions of Part 4B do not prescribe the specific responsibility of individuals within the firm for actions related to independence, instead referring to “firm” for ease of reference. Firms assign responsibility for a particular action to an individual or a group of individuals (such as an assurance team) in accordance with SQC 1. In addition, an individual professional accountant remains responsible for compliance with any provisions that apply to that accountant’s activities, interests or relationships.

900.4 Independence is linked to the principles of objectivity and integrity. It comprises:

- (a) Independence of mind – the state of mind that permits the expression of a conclusion without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment, thereby allowing an individual to act with integrity, and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism.
- (b) Independence in appearance – the avoidance of facts and circumstances that are so significant that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that a firm’s or an assurance team member’s integrity, objectivity or professional skepticism has been compromised.

In this Part, references to an individual or firm being “independent” mean that the individual or firm has complied with the provisions of this Part.

900.5 When performing assurance engagements, the Code requires firms to comply with the fundamental principles and be independent. This Part sets out specific requirements and application material on how to apply the conceptual framework to maintain independence when performing such engagements. The conceptual framework set out in Section 120 applies to independence as it does to the fundamental principles set out in Section 110.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 900.6 This Part describes:
- (a) Facts and circumstances, including professional activities, interests and relationships, that create or might create threats to independence;
 - (b) Potential actions, including safeguards, that might be appropriate to address any such threats; and
 - (c) Some situations where the threats cannot be eliminated or there can be no safeguards to reduce the threats to an acceptable level.

Description of Other Assurance Engagements

- 900.7 Assurance engagements are designed to enhance intended users' degree of confidence about the outcome of the evaluation or measurement of a subject matter against criteria. In an assurance engagement, the firm expresses a conclusion designed to enhance the degree of confidence of the intended users (other than the responsible party) about the outcome of the evaluation or measurement of a subject matter against criteria. The Assurance Framework describes the elements and objectives of an assurance engagement and identifies engagements to which SAEs apply. For a description of the elements and objectives of an assurance engagement, refer to the Assurance Framework.
- 900.8 The outcome of the evaluation or measurement of a subject matter is the information that results from applying the criteria to the subject matter. The term "subject matter information" is used to mean the outcome of the evaluation or measurement of a subject matter.
- 900.9 Assurance engagements might be assertion-based or direct reporting. In either case, they involve three separate parties: a firm, a responsible party and intended users.
- 900.10 In an assertion-based assurance engagement, the evaluation or measurement of the subject matter is performed by the responsible party. The subject matter information is in the form of an assertion by the responsible party that is made available to the intended users.

- 900.11 In a direct reporting assurance engagement, the firm:
- (a) Directly performs the evaluation or measurement of the subject matter; or
 - (b) Obtains a representation from the responsible party that has performed the evaluation or measurement that is not available to the intended users. The subject matter information is provided to the intended users in the assurance report.

Reports that Include a Restriction on Use and Distribution

- 900.12 An assurance report might include a restriction on use and distribution. If it does and the conditions set out in Section 990 are met, then the independence requirements in this Part may be modified as provided in Section 990.

Audit and Review Engagements

- 900.13 Independence standards for audit and review engagements are set out in Part 4A – *Independence for Audit and Review Engagements*. If a firm performs both an assurance engagement and an audit or review engagement for the same client, the requirements in Part 4A continue to apply to the firm, a network firm and the audit or review team members.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R900.14** A firm performing an assurance engagement shall be independent.
- R900.15** A firm shall apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence in relation to an assurance engagement.

Network firms

- R900.16** When a firm has reason to believe that interests and relationships of a network firm create a threat to the firm's independence, the firm shall evaluate and address any such threat.
- 900.16 A1 Network firms are discussed in paragraphs 400.50 A1 to 400.54 A1.

CODE OF ETHICS

Related Entities

R900.17 When the assurance team knows or has reason to believe that a relationship or circumstance involving a related entity of the assurance client is relevant to the evaluation of the firm's independence from the client, the assurance team shall include that related entity when identifying, evaluating and addressing threats to independence.

Types of Assurance Engagements

Assertion-based Assurance Engagements

R900.18 When performing an assertion-based assurance engagement:

- (a) The assurance team members and the firm shall be independent of the assurance client (the party responsible for the subject matter information, and which might be responsible for the subject matter) as set out in this Part. The independence requirements set out in this Part prohibit certain relationships between assurance team members and (i) directors or officers, and (ii) individuals at the client in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information;
- (b) The firm shall apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to relationships with individuals at the client in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement; and
- (c) The firm shall evaluate and address any threats that the firm has reason to believe are created by network firm interests and relationships.

R900.19 When performing an assertion-based assurance engagement where the responsible party is responsible for the subject matter information but not the subject matter:

- (a) The assurance team members and the firm shall be independent of the party responsible for the subject matter information (the assurance client); and
- (b) The firm shall evaluate and address any threats the firm has reason to believe are created by interests and

CODE OF ETHICS

relationships between an assurance team member, the firm, a network firm and the party responsible for the subject matter.

- 900.19 A1 In the majority of assertion-based assurance engagements, the responsible party is responsible for both the subject matter information and the subject matter. However, in some engagements, the responsible party might not be responsible for the subject matter. An example might be when a firm is engaged to perform an assurance engagement regarding a report that an environmental consultant has prepared about a company's sustainability practices for distribution to intended users. In this case, the environmental consultant is the responsible party for the subject matter information but the company is responsible for the subject matter (the sustainability practices).

Direct Reporting Assurance Engagements

R900.20 When performing a direct reporting assurance engagement:

- (a) The assurance team members and the firm shall be independent of the assurance client (the party responsible for the subject matter); and
- (b) The firm shall evaluate and address any threats to independence the firm has reason to believe are created by network firm interests and relationships.

Multiple Responsible Parties

900.21 A1 In some assurance engagements, whether assertion-based or direct reporting, there might be several responsible parties. In determining whether it is necessary to apply the provisions in this Part to each responsible party in such engagements, the firm may take into account certain matters. These matters include whether an interest or relationship between the firm, or an assurance team member, and a particular responsible party would create a threat to independence that is not trivial and inconsequential in the context of the subject matter information. This determination will take into account factors such as:

- (a) The materiality of the subject matter information (or of

CODE OF ETHICS

the subject matter) for which the particular responsible party is responsible.

- (b) The degree of public interest associated with the engagement.

If the firm determines that the threat created by any such interest or relationship with a particular responsible party would be trivial and inconsequential, it might not be necessary to apply all of the provisions of this section to that responsible party.

Period During which Independence is Required

R900.30 Independence, as required by this Part, shall be maintained during both:

- (a) The engagement period; and
- (b) The period covered by the subject matter information.

900.30 A1 The engagement period starts when the assurance team begins to perform assurance services with respect to the particular engagement. The engagement period ends when the assurance report is issued. When the engagement is of a recurring nature, it ends at the later of the notification by either party that the professional relationship has ended or the issuance of the final assurance report.

R900.31 If an entity becomes an assurance client during or after the period covered by the subject matter information on which the firm will express a conclusion, the firm shall determine whether any threats to independence are created by:

- (a) Financial or business relationships with the assurance client during or after the period covered by the subject matter information but before accepting the assurance engagement; or
- (b) Previous services provided to the assurance client.

R900.32 Threats to independence are created if a non-assurance service was provided to the assurance client during, or after the period covered by the subject matter information, but before the assurance team begins to perform assurance services, and the service would not be permitted during the engagement period.

CODE OF ETHICS

In such circumstances, the firm shall evaluate and address any threat to independence created by the service. If the threats are not at an acceptable level, the firm shall only accept the assurance engagement if the threats are reduced to an acceptable level.

900.32 A1 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such threats include:

- Using professionals who are not assurance team members to perform the service.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the assurance and non-assurance work as appropriate.

R900.33 Subject to the applicable restrictions stated under Section R900.15, if a non-assurance service that would not be permitted during the engagement period has not been completed and it is not practical to complete or end the service before the commencement of professional services in connection with the assurance engagement, the firm shall only accept the assurance engagement if:

- (a) The firm is satisfied that:
 - (i) The non-assurance service will be completed within a short period of time; or
 - (ii) The client has arrangements in place to transition the service to another provider within a short period of time;
- (b) The firm applies safeguards when necessary during the service period; and
- (c) The firm discusses the matter with those charged with governance.

General Documentation of Independence for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements

R900.40 A firm shall document conclusions regarding compliance with this Part, and the substance of any relevant discussions that support those conclusions. In particular:

CODE OF ETHICS

- (a) When safeguards are applied to address a threat, the firm shall document the nature of the threat and the safeguards in place or applied; and
- (b) When a threat required significant analysis and the firm concluded that the threat was already at an acceptable level, the firm shall document the nature of the threat and the rationale for the conclusion.

900.40 A1 Documentation provides evidence of the firm's judgments in forming conclusions regarding compliance with this Part. However, a lack of documentation does not determine whether a firm considered a particular matter or whether the firm is independent.

Breach of an Independence Provision for Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements

When a Firm Identifies a Breach

R900.50 Subject to the additional restrictions under Section R900.15 of the code, if a firm concludes that a breach of a requirement in this Part has occurred, the firm shall:

- (a) End, suspend or eliminate the interest or relationship that created the breach;
- (b) Evaluate the significance of the breach and its impact on the firm's objectivity and ability to issue an assurance report; and
- (c) Determine whether action can be taken that satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the breach.

In making this determination, the firm shall exercise professional judgment and take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that the firm's objectivity would be compromised, and therefore, the firm would be unable to issue an assurance report.

R900.51 If the firm determines that action cannot be taken to address the consequences of the breach satisfactorily, the firm shall, as soon as possible, inform the party that engaged the firm or those charged with governance, as appropriate. The firm shall

CODE OF ETHICS

also take the steps necessary to end the assurance engagement in compliance with any applicable legal or regulatory requirements relevant to ending the assurance engagement.

R900.52 Subject to the additional restrictions under Section R900.15 of the code, if the firm determines that action can be taken to address the consequences of the breach satisfactorily, the firm shall discuss the breach and the action it has taken or proposes to take with the party that engaged the firm or those charged with governance, as appropriate. The firm shall discuss the breach and the proposed action on a timely basis, taking into account the circumstances of the engagement and the breach.

R900.53 If the party that engaged the firm does not, or those charged with governance do not concur that the action proposed by the firm in accordance with paragraph R900.50(c) satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the breach, the firm shall take the steps necessary to end the assurance engagement in compliance with any applicable legal or regulatory requirements relevant to ending the assurance engagement.

Documentation

R900.54 In complying with the requirements in paragraphs R900.50 to R900.53, the firm shall document:

- (a) The breach;
- (b) The actions taken;
- (c) The key decisions made; and
- (d) All the matters discussed with the party that engaged the firm or those charged with governance.

R900.55 If the firm continues with the assurance engagement, it shall document:

- (a) The conclusion that, in the firm's professional judgment, objectivity has not been compromised; and
- (b) The rationale for why the action taken satisfactorily addressed the consequences of the breach so that the firm could issue an assurance report.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 905 FEES

Introduction

- 905.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 905.2 The nature and level of fees or other types of remuneration might create a self-interest or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Fees—Relative Size

- 905.3 A1 When the total fees generated from an assurance client by the firm expressing the conclusion in an assurance engagement represent a large proportion of the total fees of that firm, the dependence on that client and concern about losing the client create a self-interest or intimidation threat.
- 905.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The operating structure of the firm.
 - Whether the firm is well established or new.
 - The significance of the client qualitatively and/or quantitatively to the firm.
- 905.3 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest or intimidation threat is increasing the client base in the firm to reduce dependence on the assurance client.
- 905.3 A4 A self-interest or intimidation threat is also created when the fees generated by the firm from an assurance client represent a large proportion of the revenue from an individual partner's clients.
- 905.3 A5 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest or intimidation threat include:

CODE OF ETHICS

- Increasing the client base of the partner to reduce dependence on the assurance client.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not an assurance team member review the work.

Fees—Overdue

905.4 A1 A self-interest threat might be created if a significant part of fees is not paid before the assurance report, if any, for the following period is issued. It is generally expected that the firm will require payment of such fees before any such report is issued. The requirements and application material set out in Section 911 with respect to loans and guarantees might also apply to situations where such unpaid fees exist.

905.4 A2 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Obtaining partial payment of overdue fees.
- Having an appropriate reviewer who did not take part in the assurance engagement review the work performed.

R905.5 When a significant part of fees due from an assurance client remains unpaid for a long time, the firm shall determine:

- (a) Whether the overdue fees might be equivalent to a loan to the client; and
- (b) Whether it is appropriate for the firm to be re-appointed or continue the assurance engagement.

Contingent Fees

905.6 A1 Contingent fees are fees calculated on a predetermined basis relating to the outcome of a transaction or the result of the services performed. A contingent fee charged through an intermediary is an example of an indirect contingent fee. In this section, a fee is not regarded as being contingent if established by a court or other public authority.

R905.7 A firm shall not charge directly or indirectly a contingent fee for an assurance engagement.

R905.8 A firm shall not charge directly or indirectly a contingent fee for

CODE OF ETHICS

a non-assurance service provided to an assurance client if the outcome of the non-assurance service, and therefore, the amount of the fee, is dependent on a future or contemporary judgment related to a matter that is material to the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.

905.9 A1 Paragraphs R905.7 and R905.8 preclude a firm from entering into certain contingent fee arrangements with an assurance client. Even if a contingent fee arrangement is not precluded when providing a non-assurance service to an assurance client, a self-interest threat might still be created.

905.9 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:

- The range of possible fee amounts.
- Whether an appropriate authority determines the outcome on which the contingent fee depends.
- Disclosure to intended users of the work performed by the firm and the basis of remuneration.
- The nature of the service.
- The effect of the event or transaction on the subject matter information.

905.9 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not involved in performing the non-assurance service review the relevant assurance work.
- Obtaining an advance written agreement with the client on the basis of remuneration.

SECTION 906

GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

Introduction

- 906.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 906.2 Accepting gifts and hospitality from an assurance client might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out a specific requirement and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirement and Application Material

- R906.3** A firm or an assurance team member shall not accept gifts and hospitality from an assurance client, unless the value is trivial and inconsequential.
- 906.3 A1 Where a firm or assurance team member is offering or accepting an inducement to or from an assurance client, the requirements and application material set out in Section 340 apply and non-compliance with these requirements might create threats to independence.
- 906.3 A2 The requirements set out in Section 340 relating to offering or accepting inducements do not allow a firm or assurance team member to accept gifts and hospitality where the intent is to improperly influence behaviour even if the value is trivial and inconsequential.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 907

ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION

Introduction

- 907.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 907.2 When litigation with an assurance client occurs, or appears likely, self-interest and intimidation threats are created. This section sets out specific application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Application Material

General

- 907.3 A1 The relationship between client management and assurance team members must be characterized by complete candor and full disclosure regarding all aspects of a client's operations. Adversarial positions might result from actual or threatened litigation between an assurance client and the firm or an assurance team member. Such adversarial positions might affect management's willingness to make complete disclosures and create self-interest and intimidation threats.
- 907.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The materiality of the litigation.
 - Whether the litigation relates to a prior assurance engagement.
- 907.3 A3 If the litigation involves an assurance team member, an example of an action that might eliminate such self-interest and intimidation threats is removing that individual from the assurance team.
- 907.3 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such self-interest and intimidation threats is having an appropriate reviewer review the work performed.

SECTION 910 FINANCIAL INTERESTS

Introduction

- 910.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 910.2 Holding a financial interest in an assurance client might create a self-interest threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 910.3 A1 A financial interest might be held directly or indirectly through an intermediary such as a collective investment vehicle, an estate or a trust. When a beneficial owner has control over the intermediary or ability to influence its investment decisions, the Code defines that financial interest to be direct. Conversely, when a beneficial owner has no control over the intermediary or ability to influence its investment decisions, the Code defines that financial interest to be indirect.
- 910.3 A2 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a financial interest. In determining whether such an interest is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.
- 910.3 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-interest threat created by holding a financial interest in an assurance client include:
- The role of the individual holding the financial interest.
 - Whether the financial interest is direct or indirect.
 - The materiality of the financial interest.

CODE OF ETHICS

Financial Interests Held by the Firm, Assurance Team Members and Immediate Family

R910.4 A direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client shall not be held by:

- (a) The firm; or
- (b) An assurance team member or any of that individual's immediate family.

Financial Interests in an Entity Controlling an Assurance Client

R910.5 When an entity has a controlling interest in the assurance client and the client is material to the entity, neither the firm, nor an assurance team member, nor any of that individual's immediate family shall hold a direct or material indirect financial interest in that entity.

Financial Interests Held as Trustee

R910.6 Paragraph R910.4 shall also apply to a financial interest in an assurance client held in a trust for which the firm or individual acts as trustee unless:

- (a) None of the following is a beneficiary of the trust: the trustee, the assurance team member or any of that individual's immediate family, or the firm;
- (b) The interest in the assurance client held by the trust is not material to the trust;
- (c) The trust is not able to exercise significant influence over the assurance client; and
- (d) None of the following can significantly influence any investment decision involving a financial interest in the assurance client: the trustee, the assurance team member or any of that individual's immediate family, or the firm.

Financial Interests Received Unintentionally

R910.7 If a firm, an assurance team member, or any of that individual's

CODE OF ETHICS

immediate family, receives a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an assurance client by way of an inheritance, gift, as a result of a merger, or in similar circumstances and the interest would not otherwise be permitted to be held under this section, then:

- (a) If the interest is received by the firm, the financial interest shall be disposed of immediately, or enough of an indirect financial interest shall be disposed of so that the remaining interest is no longer material; or
- (b) If the interest is received by an assurance team member, or by any of that individual's immediate family, the individual who received the financial interest shall immediately dispose of the financial interest, or dispose of enough of an indirect financial interest so that the remaining interest is no longer material.

Financial Interests – Other Circumstances

Close Family

- 910.8 A1 A self-interest threat might be created if an assurance team member knows that a close family member has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client.
- 910.8 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such a threat include:
- The nature of the relationship between the assurance team member and the close family member.
 - Whether the financial interest is direct or indirect.
 - The materiality of the financial interest to the close family member.
- 910.8 A3 Examples of actions that might eliminate such a self-interest threat include:
- Having the close family member dispose, as soon as practicable, of all of the financial interest or dispose of enough of an indirect financial interest so that the remaining interest is no longer material.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Removing the individual from the assurance team.

910.8 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the assurance team member.

Other Individuals

910.8 A5 A self-interest threat might be created if an assurance team member knows that a financial interest is held in the assurance client by individuals such as:

- Partners and professional employees of the firm, apart from those who are specifically not permitted to hold such financial interests by paragraph R910.4, or their immediate family members.
- Individuals with a close personal relationship with an assurance team member.

910.8 A6 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest threat is removing the assurance team member with the personal relationship from the assurance team.

910.8 A7 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a self-interest threat include:

- Excluding the assurance team member from any significant decision-making concerning the assurance engagement.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the assurance team member.

SECTION 911

LOANS AND GUARANTEES

Introduction

- 911.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 911.2 A loan or a guarantee of a loan with an assurance client might create a self-interest threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 911.3 A1 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a loan or guarantee. In determining whether such a loan or guarantee is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.

Loans and Guarantees with an Assurance Client

- R911.4** A firm, an assurance team member, or any of that individual’s immediate family shall not make or guarantee a loan to an assurance client unless the loan or guarantee is immaterial to both:
- (a) The firm or the individual making the loan or guarantee, as applicable; and
 - (b) The client.

Loans and Guarantees with an Assurance Client that is a Bank or Similar Institution

- R911.5** A firm, an assurance team member, or any of that individual’s immediate family shall not accept a loan, or a guarantee of a loan, from an assurance client that is a bank or a similar

CODE OF ETHICS

institution unless the loan or guarantee is made under normal lending procedures, terms and conditions.

- 911.5 A1 Examples of loans include mortgages, bank overdrafts, car loans and credit card balances.
- 911.5 A2 Even if a firm receives a loan from an assurance client that is a bank or similar institution under normal lending procedures, terms and conditions, the loan might create a self-interest threat if it is material to the assurance client or firm receiving the loan.
- 911.5 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having the work reviewed by an appropriate reviewer, who is not an assurance team member, from a network firm that is not a beneficiary of the loan.

Deposit or Brokerage Accounts

- R911.6** A firm, an assurance team member, or any of that individual's immediate family shall not have deposits or a brokerage account with an assurance client that is a bank, broker, or similar institution, unless the deposit or account is held under normal commercial terms.

Loans and Guarantees with an Assurance Client that is not a Bank or Similar Institution

- R911.7** A firm or an assurance team member, or any of that individual's immediate family, shall not accept a loan from, or have a borrowing guaranteed by, an assurance client that is not a bank or similar institution, unless the loan or guarantee is immaterial to both:
- (a)** The firm, or the individual receiving the loan or guarantee, as applicable; and
 - (b)** The client.

SECTION 920

BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS

Introduction

- 920.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 920.2 A close business relationship with an assurance client or its management might create a self- interest or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 920.3 A1 This section contains references to the “materiality” of a financial interest and the “significance” of a business relationship. In determining whether such a financial interest is material to an individual, the combined net worth of the individual and the individual’s immediate family members may be taken into account.
- 920.3 A2 Examples of a close business relationship arising from a commercial relationship or common financial interest include:
- Having a financial interest in a joint venture with either the client or a controlling owner, director or officer or other individual who performs senior managerial activities for that client.
 - Arrangements to combine one or more services or products of the firm with one or more services or products of the client and to market the package with reference to both parties.
 - Distribution or marketing arrangements under which the firm distributes or markets the client’s products or

CODE OF ETHICS

services, or the client distributes or markets the firm's products or services.

Firm, Assurance Team Member or Immediate Family Business Relationships

R920.4 A firm or an assurance team member shall not have a close business relationship with an assurance client or its management unless any financial interest is immaterial and the business relationship is insignificant to the client or its management and the firm or the assurance team member, as applicable.

920.4 A1 A self-interest or intimidation threat might be created if there is a close business relationship between the assurance client or its management and the immediate family of an assurance team member.

Buying Goods or Services

920.5 A1 The purchase of goods and services from an assurance client by a firm, or an assurance team member, or any of that individual's immediate family does not usually create a threat to independence if the transaction is in the normal course of business and at arm's length.

However, such transactions might be of such a nature and magnitude that they create a self-interest threat.

920.5 A2 Examples of actions that might eliminate such a self-interest threat include:

- Eliminating or reducing the magnitude of the transaction.
- Removing the individual from the assurance team.

SECTION 921

FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS

Introduction

- 921.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 921.2 Family or personal relationships with client personnel might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 921.3 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat might be created by family and personal relationships between an assurance team member and a director or officer or, depending on their role, certain employees of the assurance client.
- 921.3 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The individual's responsibilities on the assurance team.
 - The role of the family member or other individual within the client, and the closeness of the relationship.

Immediate Family of an Assurance Team Member

- 921.4 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is created when an immediate family member of an assurance team member is an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement.
- 921.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The position held by the immediate family member.
 - The role of the assurance team member.

CODE OF ETHICS

- 921.4 A3 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the assurance team.
- 921.4 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the assurance team so that the assurance team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the immediate family member.
- R921.5** An individual shall not participate as an assurance team member when any of that individual's immediate family:
- (a) Is a director or officer of the assurance client;
 - (b) Is an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement; or
 - (c) Was in such a position during any period covered by the engagement or the subject matter information.

Close Family of an Assurance Team Member

- 921.6 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is created when a close family member of an assurance team member is:
- (a) A director or officer of the assurance client; or
 - (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.
- 921.6 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The nature of the relationship between the assurance team member and the close family member.
 - The position held by the close family member.
 - The role of the assurance team member.
- 921.6 A3 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the assurance team.

- 921.6 A4 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the assurance team so that the assurance team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the close family member.

Other Close Relationships of an Assurance Team Member

R921.7 An assurance team member shall consult in accordance with firm policies and procedures if the assurance team member has a close relationship with an individual who is not an immediate or close family member, but who is:

- (a) A director or officer of the assurance client; or
- (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.

921.7 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat created by such relationships include:

- The nature of the relationship between the individual and the assurance team member.
- The position the individual holds with the client.
- The role of the assurance team member.

921.7 A2 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is removing the individual from the assurance team.

921.7 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat is structuring the responsibilities of the assurance team so that the assurance team member does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the individual with whom the assurance team member has a close relationship.

Relationships of Partners and Employees of the Firm

921.8 A1 A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat might be created by a personal or family relationship between:

CODE OF ETHICS

- (a) A partner or employee of the firm who is not an assurance team member; and
 - (b) A director or officer of the assurance client or an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.
- 921.8 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:
- The nature of the relationship between the partner or employee of the firm and the director or officer or employee of the client.
 - The degree of interaction of the partner or employee of the firm with the assurance team.
 - The position of the partner or employee within the firm.
 - The role of the individual within the client.
- 921.8 A3 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threats include:
- Structuring the partner's or employee's responsibilities to reduce any potential influence over the assurance engagement.
 - Having an appropriate reviewer review the relevant assurance work performed.

SECTION 922

RECENT SERVICE WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

Introduction

- 922.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 922.2 If an assurance team member has recently served as a director or officer or employee of the assurance client, a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat might be created. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Service During the Period Covered by the Assurance Report

- R922.3** The assurance team shall not include an individual who, during the period covered by the assurance report:
- (a) Had served as a director or officer of the assurance client; or
 - (b) Was an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.

Service Prior to the Period Covered by the Assurance Report

- 922.4 A1 A self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat might be created if, before the period covered by the assurance report, an assurance team member:
- (a) Had served as a director or officer of the assurance client; or
 - (b) Was an employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.

CODE OF ETHICS

For example, a threat would be created if a decision made or work performed by the individual in the prior period, while employed by the client, is to be evaluated in the current period as part of the current assurance engagement.

922.4 A2 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The position the individual held with the client.
- The length of time since the individual left the client.
- The role of the assurance team member.

922.4 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat is having an appropriate reviewer review the work performed by the assurance team member.

SECTION 923

SERVING AS A DIRECTOR OR OFFICER OF AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

Introduction

- 923.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 923.2 Serving as a director or officer of an assurance client creates self-review and self-interest threats. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

Service as Director or Officer

- R923.3** A partner or employee of the firm shall not serve as a director or officer of an assurance client of the firm.

Service as Company Secretary

- R923.4** A partner or employee of the firm shall not serve as Company Secretary for an assurance client of the firm unless:
- (a)** This practice is specifically permitted under local law, professional rules or practice;
 - (b)** Management makes all decisions; and
 - (c)** The duties and activities performed are limited to those of a routine and administrative nature, such as preparing minutes and maintaining statutory returns.
- 923.4 A1 Duties of Company Secretary might range from: administrative duties (such as personnel management and the maintenance of company records and registers) to duties as diverse as ensuring that the company complies with regulations or providing advice on corporate governance matters. Usually this position is seen to imply a close association with the entity. Therefore, a threat is created if a partner or employee of the firm serves as Company

CODE OF ETHICS

Secretary for an assurance client. (More information on providing non-assurance services to an assurance client is set out in Section 950, *Provision of Non-assurances Services to an Assurance Client*.)

SECTION 924

EMPLOYMENT WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

Introduction

- 924.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 924.2 Employment relationships with an assurance client might create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 924.3 A1 A familiarity or intimidation threat might be created if any of the following individuals have been an assurance team member or partner of the firm:
- A director or officer of the assurance client.
 - An employee who is in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement.

Former Partner or Assurance Team Member Restrictions

R924.4 If a former partner has joined an assurance client of the firm or a former assurance team member has joined the assurance client as:

- (a) A director or officer; or
- (b) An employee in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter information of the assurance engagement,

the individual shall not continue to participate in the firm's business or professional activities.

- 924.4 A1 Even if one of the individuals described in paragraph R924.4 has joined the assurance client in such a position and does not

CODE OF ETHICS

continue to participate in the firm's business or professional activities, a familiarity or intimidation threat might still be created.

924.4 A2 A familiarity or intimidation threat might also be created if a former partner of the firm has joined an entity in one of the positions described in paragraph 924.3 A1 and the entity subsequently becomes an assurance client of the firm.

924.4 A3 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of such threats include:

- The position the individual has taken at the client.
- Any involvement the individual will have with the assurance team.
- The length of time since the individual was an assurance team member or partner of the firm.
- The former position of the individual within the assurance team or firm. An example is whether the individual was responsible for maintaining regular contact with the client's management or those charged with governance.

924.4 A4 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such a familiarity or intimidation threat include:

- Making arrangements such that the individual is not entitled to any benefits or payments from the firm, unless made in accordance with fixed pre-determined arrangements.
- Making arrangements such that any amount owed to the individual is not material to the firm.
- Modifying the plan for the assurance engagement.
- Assigning to the assurance team individuals who have sufficient experience relative to the individual who has joined the client.
- Having an appropriate reviewer review the work of the former assurance team member.

CODE OF ETHICS

Assurance Team Members Entering Employment Negotiations with a Client

- R924.5** A firm shall have policies and procedures that require assurance team members to notify the firm when entering employment negotiations with an assurance client.
- 924.5 A1 A self-interest threat is created when an assurance team member participates in the assurance engagement while knowing that the assurance team member will, or might, join the client sometime in the future.
- 924.5 A2 An example of an action that might eliminate such a self-interest threat is removing the individual from the assurance engagement.
- 924.5 A3 An example of an action that might be a safeguard to address such a self-interest threat is having an appropriate reviewer review any significant judgments made by that assurance team member while on the team.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 940

LONG ASSOCIATION OF PERSONNEL WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

Introduction

- 940.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 940.2 When an individual is involved in an assurance engagement of a recurring nature over a long period of time, familiarity and self-interest threats might be created. This section sets out requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- 940.3 A1 A familiarity threat might be created as a result of an individual's long association with:
- (a) The assurance client;
 - (b) The assurance client's senior management; or
 - (c) The subject matter and subject matter information of the assurance engagement.
- 940.3 A2 A self-interest threat might be created as a result of an individual's concern about losing a longstanding assurance client or an interest in maintaining a close personal relationship with a member of senior management or those charged with governance. Such a threat might influence the individual's judgment inappropriately.
- 940.3 A3 Factors that are relevant to evaluating the level of such familiarity or self-interest threats include:
- The nature of the assurance engagement.
 - How long the individual has been an assurance team

CODE OF ETHICS

member, the individual's seniority on the team, and the nature of the roles performed, including if such a relationship existed while the individual was at a prior firm.

- The extent to which the work of the individual is directed, reviewed and supervised by more senior personnel.
- The extent to which the individual, due to the individual's seniority, has the ability to influence the outcome of the assurance engagement, for example, by making key decisions or directing the work of other engagement team members.
- The closeness of the individual's personal relationship with the assurance client or, if relevant, senior management.
- The nature, frequency and extent of interaction between the individual and the assurance client.
- Whether the nature or complexity of the subject matter or subject matter information has changed.
- Whether there have been any recent changes in the individual or individuals who are the responsible party or, if relevant, senior management.

940.3 A4 The combination of two or more factors might increase or reduce the level of the threats. For example, familiarity threats created over time by the increasingly close relationship between an individual and the assurance client would be reduced by the departure of the individual who is the responsible party.

940.3 A5 An example of an action that might eliminate the familiarity and self-interest threats in relation to a specific engagement would be rotating the individual off the assurance team.

940.3 A6 Examples of actions that might be safeguards to address such familiarity or self-interest threats include:

- Changing the role of the individual on the assurance team or the nature and extent of the tasks the individual performs.

CODE OF ETHICS

- Having an appropriate reviewer who was not an assurance team member review the work of the individual.
- Performing regular independent internal or external quality reviews of the engagement.

R940.4 If a firm decides that the level of the threats created can only be addressed by rotating the individual off the assurance team, the firm shall determine an appropriate period during which the individual shall not:

- (a) Be a member of the engagement team for the assurance engagement;
- (b) Provide quality control for the assurance engagement; or
- (c) Exert direct influence on the outcome of the assurance engagement.

The period shall be of sufficient duration to allow the familiarity and self-interest threats to be addressed.

SECTION 950

PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO ASSURANCE CLIENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENT CLIENTS

Introduction

- 950.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent, and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 950.2 Firms might provide a range of non-assurance services to their assurance clients, consistent with their skills and expertise. Providing certain non-assurance services to assurance clients might create threats to compliance with the fundamental principles and threats to independence. This section sets out specific requirements and application material relevant to applying the conceptual framework in such circumstances.

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R950.3** Before a firm accepts an engagement to provide a non-assurance service to an assurance client, the firm shall determine whether providing such a service might create a threat to independence.
- 950.3 A1 The requirements and application material in this section assist firms in analyzing certain types of non-assurance services and the related threats that might be created when a firm accepts or provides non-assurance services to an assurance client.
- 950.3 A2 New business practices, the evolution of financial markets and changes in information technology are among the developments that make it impossible to draw up an all-inclusive list of non-assurance services that might be provided to an assurance client. As a result, the Code does not include an exhaustive listing of all non-assurance services that might be provided to an assurance client.

CODE OF ETHICS

Evaluating Threats

950.4 A1 Factors that are relevant in evaluating the level of threats created by providing a non-assurance service to an assurance client include:

- The nature, scope and purpose of the service.
- The degree of reliance that will be placed on the outcome of the service as part of the assurance engagement.
- The legal and regulatory environment in which the service is provided.
- Whether the outcome of the service will affect matters reflected in the subject matter or subject matter information of the assurance engagement, and, if so:
 - The extent to which the outcome of the service will have a material or significant effect on the subject matter of the assurance engagement.
 - The extent of the assurance client's involvement in determining significant matters of judgment.
- The level of expertise of the client's management and employees with respect to the type of service provided.

Materiality in Relation to an Assurance Client's Information

950.4 A2 The concept of materiality in relation to an assurance client's information is addressed in the *Guidance Note on Reports or Certificates for Special Purposes (Revised 2016)*. The determination of materiality involves the exercise of professional judgment and is impacted by both quantitative and qualitative factors. It is also affected by perceptions of the financial or other information needs of users.

Multiple Non-assurance Services Provided to the Same Assurance Client

950.4 A3 A firm might provide multiple non-assurance services to an assurance client. In these circumstances the combined effect of threats created by providing those services is relevant to the firm's evaluation of threats.

Addressing Threats

950.5 A1 Paragraph 120.10 A2 includes a description of safeguards. In relation to providing non- assurance services to assurance clients, safeguards are actions, individually or in combination, that the firm takes that effectively reduce threats to independence to an acceptable level. In some situations, when a threat is created by providing a service to an assurance client, safeguards might not be available. In such situations, the application of the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 requires the firm to decline or end the non-assurance service or the assurance engagement.

Prohibition on Assuming Management Responsibilities

R950.6 A firm shall not assume a management responsibility related to the subject matter or subject matter information of an assurance engagement provided by the firm. If the firm assumes a management responsibility as part of any other service provided to the assurance client, the firm shall ensure that the responsibility is not related to the subject matter or subject matter information of the assurance engagement provided by the firm.

950.6 A1 Management responsibilities involve controlling, leading and directing an entity, including making decisions regarding the acquisition, deployment and control of human, financial, technological, physical and intangible resources.

950.6 A2 Providing a non-assurance service to an assurance client creates self-review and self-interest threats if the firm assumes a management responsibility when performing the service. In relation to providing a service related to the subject matter or subject matter information of an assurance engagement provided by the firm, assuming a management responsibility also creates a familiarity threat and might create an advocacy threat because the firm becomes too closely aligned with the views and interests of management.

950.6 A3 Determining whether an activity is a management responsibility depends on the circumstances and requires the exercise of professional judgment. Examples of activities that would be

CODE OF ETHICS

considered a management responsibility include:

- Setting policies and strategic direction.
- Hiring or dismissing employees.
- Directing and taking responsibility for the actions of employees in relation to the employees' work for the entity.
- Authorizing transactions.
- Controlling or managing bank accounts or investments.
- Deciding which recommendations of the firm or other third parties to implement.
- Reporting to those charged with governance on behalf of management.
- Taking responsibility for designing, implementing, monitoring and maintaining internal control.

950.6 A4 Providing advice and recommendations to assist the management of an assurance client in discharging its responsibilities is not assuming a management responsibility. (Ref: Paras. R950.6 to 950.6 A3).

R950.7 To avoid assuming a management responsibility when providing non-assurance services to an assurance client that are related to the subject matter or subject matter information of the assurance engagement, the firm shall be satisfied that client management makes all related judgments and decisions that are the proper responsibility of management. This includes ensuring that the client's management:

- (a) Designates an individual who possesses suitable skill, knowledge and experience to be responsible at all times for the client's decisions and to oversee the services. Such an individual, preferably within senior management, would understand:
 - (i) The objectives, nature and results of the services; and
 - (ii) The respective client and firm responsibilities.

CODE OF ETHICS

However, the individual is not required to possess the expertise to perform or re-perform the services.

- (b) Provides oversight of the services and evaluates the adequacy of the results of the service performed for the client's purpose; and
- (c) Accepts responsibility for the actions, if any, to be taken arising from the results of the services.

Other Considerations Related to Providing Specific Non-Assurance Services

950.8 A1 A self-review threat might be created if the firm is involved in the preparation of subject matter information which is subsequently the subject matter information of an assurance engagement. Examples of non-assurance services that might create such self-review threats when providing services related to the subject matter information of an assurance engagement include:

- (a) Developing and preparing prospective information and subsequently providing assurance on this information.
- (b) Performing a valuation that forms part of the subject matter information of an assurance engagement.

CODE OF ETHICS

SECTION 990

REPORTS THAT INCLUDE A RESTRICTION ON USE AND DISTRIBUTION (ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS)

Introduction

- 990.1 Firms are required to comply with the fundamental principles, be independent and apply the conceptual framework set out in Section 120 to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence.
- 990.2 This section sets out certain modifications to Part 4B which are permitted in certain circumstances involving assurance engagements where the report includes a restriction on use and distribution. In this section, an engagement to issue a restricted use and distribution assurance report in the circumstances set out in paragraph R990.3 is referred to as an “eligible assurance engagement.”

Requirements and Application Material

General

- R990.3** When a firm intends to issue a report on an assurance engagement which includes a restriction on use and distribution, the independence requirements set out in Part 4B shall be eligible for the modifications that are permitted by this section, but only if:
- (a) The firm communicates with the intended users of the report regarding the modified independence requirements that are to be applied in providing the service; and
 - (b) The intended users of the report understand the purpose, subject matter information and limitations of the report and explicitly agree to the application of the modifications.
- 990.3 A1 The intended users of the report might obtain an understanding of the purpose, subject matter information, and limitations of the

CODE OF ETHICS

report by participating, either directly, or indirectly through a representative who has authority to act for the intended users, in establishing the nature and scope of the engagement. In either case, this participation helps the firm to communicate with intended users about independence matters, including the circumstances that are relevant to applying the conceptual framework. It also allows the firm to obtain the agreement of the intended users to the modified independence requirements.

R990.4 Where the intended users are a class of users who are not specifically identifiable by name at the time the engagement terms are established, the firm shall subsequently make such users aware of the modified independence requirements agreed to by their representative.

990.4 A1 For example, where the intended users are a class of users such as lenders in a syndicated loan arrangement, the firm might describe the modified independence requirements in an engagement letter to the representative of the lenders. The representative might then make the firm's engagement letter available to the members of the group of lenders to meet the requirement for the firm to make such users aware of the modified independence requirements agreed to by the representative.

R990.5 When the firm performs an eligible assurance engagement, any modifications to Part 4B shall be limited to those modifications set out in paragraphs R990.7 and R990.8.

R990.6 If the firm also issues an assurance report that does not include a restriction on use and distribution for the same client, the firm shall apply Part 4B to that assurance engagement.

Financial Interests, Loans and Guarantees, Close Business, Family and Personal Relationships

R990.7 When the firm performs an eligible assurance engagement:

- (a) The relevant provisions set out in Sections 910, 911, 920, 921, 922 and 924 need apply only to the members of the engagement team, and their immediate and close family members;

CODE OF ETHICS

- (b)** The firm shall identify, evaluate and address any threats to independence created by interests and relationships, as set out in Sections 910, 911, 920, 921, 922 and 924, between the assurance client and the following assurance team members;
 - (i)** Those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry specific issues, transactions or events; and
 - (ii)** Those who provide quality control for the engagement, including those who perform the engagement quality control review; and
- (c)** The firm shall evaluate and address any threats that the engagement team has reason to believe are created by interests and relationships between the assurance client and others within the firm who can directly influence the outcome of the assurance engagement, as set out in Sections 910, 911, 920, 921, 922 and 924.

990.7 A1 Others within the firm who can directly influence the outcome of the assurance engagement include those who recommend the compensation, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight, of the assurance engagement partner in connection with the performance of the assurance engagement.

R990.8 When the firm performs an eligible assurance engagement, the firm shall not hold a material direct or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client.

GLOSSARY, INCLUDING LISTS OF ABBREVIATIONS

In the *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (including Independence Standards)*, the singular shall be construed as including the plural as well as the reverse, and the terms below have the following meanings assigned to them.

In this Glossary, explanations of defined terms are shown in regular font; italics are used for explanations of described terms which have a specific meaning in certain parts of the Code or for additional explanations of defined terms. References are also provided to terms described in the Code.

Act	The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949
Acceptable level	A level at which a professional accountant using the reasonable and informed third party test would likely conclude that the accountant complies with the fundamental principles.
Advertising	The communication to the public of information as to the services or skills provided by professional accountants in public practice with a view to procuring professional business.
Appropriate reviewer	<i>An appropriate reviewer is a professional with the necessary knowledge, skills, experience and authority to review, in an objective manner, the relevant work performed or service provided. Such an individual might be a professional accountant.</i> <i>This term is described in paragraph 300.8 A4.</i>
Assurance client	The responsible party that is the person (or persons) who: (a) In a direct reporting engagement, is responsible for the subject matter; or (b) In an assertion-based engagement, is responsible for the subject matter information and might be responsible for the subject matter.
Assurance	An engagement in which a professional accountant in public practice expresses a conclusion designed to

CODE OF ETHICS

engagement	<p>enhance the degree of confidence of the intended users other than the responsible party about the outcome of the evaluation or measurement of a subject matter against criteria.</p> <p>(For guidance on assurance engagements, see the <i>Framework for Assurance Engagements</i> issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. The <i>Framework for Assurance Engagements</i> describes the elements and objectives of an assurance engagement and identifies engagements to which <i>Standards on Auditing</i> (SAs), <i>Standards on Review Engagements</i> (SREs) and <i>Standards on Assurance Engagements</i> (SAEs) apply.)</p>
Assurance team	<p>(a) All members of the engagement team for the assurance engagement;</p> <p>(b) All others within a firm who can directly influence the outcome of the assurance engagement, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(i) Those who recommend the compensation of, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight of the assurance engagement partner in connection with the performance of the assurance engagement;(ii) Those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry specific issues, transactions or events for the assurance engagement; and(iii) Those who provide quality control for the assurance engagement, including those who perform the engagement quality control review for the assurance engagement.
Audit	<p><i>In Part 4A, the term “audit” applies equally to “review.”</i></p>
Audit client	<p>An entity in respect of which a firm conducts an audit engagement. When the client is a listed entity, audit client</p>

CODE OF ETHICS

will always include its related entities. When the audit client is not a listed entity, audit client includes those related entities over which the client has direct or indirect control. (See also paragraph R400.20.)

In Part 4A, the term “audit client” applies equally to “review client.”

Audit engagement A reasonable assurance engagement in which a professional accountant in public practice expresses an opinion whether financial statements are prepared, in all material respects (or give a true and fair view or are presented fairly, in all material respects), in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, such as an engagement conducted in accordance with *Standards on Auditing*. This includes a Statutory Audit, which is an audit required by legislation or other regulation.

In Part 4A, the term “audit engagement” applies equally to “review engagement.”

Audit report *In Part 4A, the term “audit report” applies equally to “review report.”*

Audit team

- (a) All members of the engagement team for the audit engagement;
- (b) All others within a firm who can directly influence the outcome of the audit engagement, including:
 - (i) Those who recommend the compensation of, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight of the engagement partner in connection with the performance of the audit engagement, including those at all successively senior levels above the engagement partner through to the individual who is the firm’s Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent);
 - (ii) Those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events for the engagement; and

CODE OF ETHICS

	(iii) Those who provide quality control for the engagement, including those who perform the engagement quality control review for the engagement; and
	(c) All those within a network firm who can directly influence the outcome of the audit engagement. <i>In Part 4A, the term “audit team” applies equally to “review team.”</i>
Close family	A parent, child or sibling who is not an immediate family member.
Conceptual framework	<i>This term is described in Section 120.</i>
Contingent fee	A fee calculated on a predetermined basis relating to the outcome of a transaction or the result of the services performed by the firm. A fee that is established by a court or other public authority is not a contingent fee.
Cooling-off period	<i>This term is described in paragraph R540.5 for the purposes of paragraphs R540.11 to R540.19.</i>
Council	The Governing body of the Institute constituted under the Act for the management of the affairs of the Institute and for discharging the functions assigned to it under the Act.
Direct financial interest	A financial interest: (a) Owned directly by and under the control of an individual or entity (including those managed on a discretionary basis by others); or (b) Beneficially owned through a collective investment vehicle, estate, trust or other intermediary over which the individual or entity has control, or the ability to influence investment decisions.
Director or officer	Those charged with the governance of an entity, or acting in an equivalent capacity, regardless of their title. In case of a Company, as defined under Sections 2(34) and 2(59) of the Companies Act, 2013.
Eligible audit engagement	<i>This term is described in paragraph 800.2 for the purposes of Section 800</i>

CODE OF ETHICS

Eligible assurance engagement	<i>This term is described in paragraph 990.2 for the purposes of Section 990.</i>
Engagement partner	The partner or other person in the firm who is responsible for the engagement and its performance, and for the report that is issued on behalf of the firm, and who, where required, has the appropriate authority from a professional, legal or regulatory body.
Engagement period (Audit and Review)	The engagement period starts when the audit team begins to perform the audit. The engagement period ends when the audit report is issued. When the engagement is of a recurring nature, it ends at the later of the notification by either party that the professional relationship has ended or the issuance of the final audit report. Where the audit client is a statutory audit client under Companies Act, 2013, the engagement period shall be determined in accordance with the provisions contained in the Companies Act, 2013
Engagement period (Assurance Engagements Other than Audit and Review Engagements)	The engagement period starts when the assurance team begins to perform assurance services with respect to the particular engagement. The engagement period ends when the assurance report is issued. When the engagement is of a recurring nature, it ends at the later of the notification by either party that the professional relationship has ended or the issuance of the final assurance report.
Engagement quality control review	A process designed to provide an objective evaluation, on or before the report is issued, of the significant judgments the engagement team made and the conclusions it reached in formulating the report.
Engagement team	All partners and staff performing the engagement, and any individuals engaged by the firm or a network firm who perform assurance procedures on the engagement. This excludes external experts engaged by the firm or by a network firm. The term “engagement team” also excludes individuals

CODE OF ETHICS

	within the client's internal audit function who provide direct assistance on an audit engagement when the external auditor complies with the requirements of SA 610 (Revised), <i>Using the Work of Internal Auditors</i> .
Existing accountant	A professional accountant in public practice currently holding an audit appointment or carrying out accounting, tax, consulting or similar professional services for a client.
External expert	An individual (who is not a partner or a member of the professional staff, including temporary staff, of the firm or a network firm) or organization possessing skills, knowledge and experience in a field other than accounting or auditing, whose work in that field is used to assist the professional accountant in obtaining sufficient appropriate evidence.
Financial interest	An interest in an equity or other security, debenture, loan or other debt instrument of an entity, including rights and obligations to acquire such an interest and derivatives directly related to such interest.
Financial statements	A structured representation of historical financial information, including related notes, intended to communicate an entity's economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time in accordance with a financial reporting framework. The related notes ordinarily comprise a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information. The term can relate to a complete set of financial statements, but it can also refer to a single financial statement, for example, a balance sheet, or a statement of revenues and expenses, and related explanatory notes.
Financial statements on which the firm will express an opinion	In the case of a single entity, the financial statements of that entity. In the case of consolidated financial statements, also referred to as group financial statements, the consolidated financial statements.

CODE OF ETHICS

Firm	<p>A sole practitioner, partnership including limited liability partnership or any such entity of professional accountants, as may be permitted by law;</p> <p><i>Paragraphs 400.4 and 900.3 explain how the word “firm” is used to address the responsibility of professional accountants and firms for compliance with Parts 4A and 4B, respectively.</i></p>										
Fundamental principles	<p><i>This term is described in paragraph 110.1 A1. Each of the fundamental principles is, in turn, described in the following paragraphs:</i></p> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td><i>Integrity</i></td> <td style="text-align: right;"><i>R111.1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Objectivity</i></td> <td style="text-align: right;"><i>R112.1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Professional competence and due care</i></td> <td style="text-align: right;"><i>R113.1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Confidentiality</i></td> <td style="text-align: right;"><i>R114.1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Professional behaviour</i></td> <td style="text-align: right;"><i>R115.1</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>Integrity</i>	<i>R111.1</i>	<i>Objectivity</i>	<i>R112.1</i>	<i>Professional competence and due care</i>	<i>R113.1</i>	<i>Confidentiality</i>	<i>R114.1</i>	<i>Professional behaviour</i>	<i>R115.1</i>
<i>Integrity</i>	<i>R111.1</i>										
<i>Objectivity</i>	<i>R112.1</i>										
<i>Professional competence and due care</i>	<i>R113.1</i>										
<i>Confidentiality</i>	<i>R114.1</i>										
<i>Professional behaviour</i>	<i>R115.1</i>										
Historical financial information	<p>Information expressed in financial terms in relation to a particular entity, derived primarily from that entity's accounting system, about economic events occurring in past time periods or about economic conditions or circumstances at points in time in the past.</p>										
Immediate family Independence	<p>A spouse (or equivalent) or dependent. Independence comprises:</p> <p>(a) Independence of mind – the state of mind that permits the expression of a conclusion without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment, thereby allowing an individual to act with integrity, and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism.</p> <p>(b) Independence in appearance – the avoidance of facts and circumstances that are so significant that a reasonable and informed third party would be likely to conclude that a firm's, or an audit or assurance team member's, integrity, objectivity or professional skepticism has been compromised.</p>										

CODE OF ETHICS

As set out in paragraphs 400.5 and 900.4, references to an individual or firm being “independent” mean that the individual or firm has complied with Parts 4A and 4B, as applicable.

Indirect financial interest	A financial interest beneficially owned through a collective investment vehicle, estate, trust or other intermediary over which the individual or entity has no control or ability to influence investment decisions.
Inducement	<p>An object, situation, or action that is used as a means to influence another individual’s behaviour, but not necessarily with the intent to improperly influence that individual’s behaviour.</p> <p><i>Inducements can range from minor acts of hospitality between business colleagues (professional accountants in service), or between professional accountants and existing or prospective clients (for professional accountants in public practice), to acts that result in non-compliance with laws and regulations. An inducement can take many different forms, for example:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Gifts.</i>• <i>Hospitality.</i>• <i>Entertainment.</i>• <i>Political or charitable donations.</i>• <i>Appeals to friendship and loyalty.</i>• <i>Employment or other commercial opportunities.</i> <p><i>Preferential treatment, rights or privileges</i></p>
Institute	The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India constituted under the provisions of The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949.
Key audit partner	The engagement partner, the individual responsible for the engagement quality control review, and other audit partners, if any, on the engagement team who make key decisions or judgments on significant matters with respect to the audit of the financial statements on which

CODE OF ETHICS

	<p>the firm will express an opinion. Depending upon the circumstances and the role of the individuals on the audit, “other audit partners” might include, for example, audit partners responsible for significant subsidiaries or divisions.</p>
Listed entity	<p>An entity whose shares, stock or debt are quoted or listed on a recognized stock exchange, or are marketed under the regulations of a recognized stock exchange or other equivalent body.</p>
May	<p><i>This term is used in the Code to denote permission to take a particular action in certain circumstances, including as an exception to a requirement. It is not used to denote possibility.</i></p>
Might	<p><i>This term is used in the Code to denote the possibility of a matter arising, an event occurring or a course of action being taken. The term does not ascribe any particular level of possibility or likelihood when used in conjunction with a threat, as the evaluation of the level of a threat depends on the facts and circumstances of any particular matter, event or course of action.</i></p>
Network firm	<p>A firm or entity that belongs to a network in accordance with the networking guidelines issued by ICAI</p>
Non-compliance with laws and regulations (Professional Accountants in Service)	<p><i>Non-compliance with laws and regulations (“non-compliance”) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations committed by the following parties:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>(a) The professional accountant’s employing organization;</i><i>(b) Those charged with governance of the employing organization;</i><i>(c) Management of the employing organization; or</i><i>(d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.</i> <p><i>This term is described in paragraph 260.5 A1.</i></p>

CODE OF ETHICS

Non-compliance with laws and regulations <i>(Professional Accountants in Public Practice)</i>	<p><i>Non-compliance with laws and regulations (“non-compliance”) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations committed by the following parties:</i></p> <p><i>(a) A client;</i></p> <p><i>(b) Those charged with governance of a client;</i></p> <p><i>(c) Management of a client; or</i></p> <p><i>(d) Other individuals working for or under the direction of a client. This term is described in paragraph 360.5 A1.</i></p>
Office	A distinct sub-group, whether organized on geographical or practice lines.
Predecessor accountant	A professional accountant in public practice being the immediately preceding accountant who has held same or similar assignment comprising same /similar scope of work
Professional accountant	<p>An individual who is a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.</p> <p><i>In Part 1, the term “professional accountant” refers to individual professional accountants in service and to professional accountants in public practice and their firms.</i></p> <p><i>In Part 2, the term “professional accountant” refers to professional accountants in service.</i></p> <p><i>In Parts 3, 4A and 4B, the term “professional accountant” refers to professional accountants in public practice and their firms.</i></p>
Professional accountant in service	A professional accountant working in areas such as commerce, industry, service, the public sector, education, the not-for-profit sector, or in regulatory or professional bodies, who might be an employee, contractor director (executive or non-executive), owner-manager or volunteer.

CODE OF ETHICS

Professional accountant in public practice	<p>Member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India who is in practice in terms of section 2 of The Chartered Accountants Act, 1949...</p> <p><i>The term “professional accountant in public practice” is also used to refer to a firm of professional accountants in public practice.</i></p>
Professional activity	<p>An activity requiring accountancy or related skills undertaken by a professional accountant, including accounting, auditing, tax, management consulting, and financial management.</p>
Professional services	<p>Professional activities performed for clients.</p>
Proposed accountant	<p>A professional accountant in public practice who is considering accepting an audit appointment or an engagement to perform accounting, tax, consulting or similar professional services for a prospective client (or in some cases, an existing client).</p>
Public interest entity	<p>(a) A listed entity; or</p> <p>(b) An entity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(i) Defined by regulation or legislation as a public interest entity; or(ii) For which the audit is required by regulation or legislation to be conducted in compliance with the same independence requirements that apply to the audit of listed entities. Such regulation might be promulgated by any relevant regulator, including an audit regulator. <p><i>For purpose of this definition, it may be noted that Banks and Insurance Companies are to be considered as Public Interest Entities.</i></p> <p><i>Other entities might also be considered by the Firms to be public interest entities, as set out in paragraph 400.8.</i></p>
Reasonable and informed	<p><i>The reasonable and informed third party test is a consideration by the professional accountant about</i></p>

CODE OF ETHICS

third party	<i>whether the same conclusions would likely be reached by another party. Such consideration is made from the perspective of a reasonable and informed third party, who weighs all the relevant facts and circumstances that the accountant knows, or could reasonably be expected to know, at the time that the conclusions are made. The reasonable and informed third party does not need to be an accountant, but would possess the relevant knowledge and experience to understand and evaluate the appropriateness of the accountant's conclusions in an impartial manner.</i>
Reasonable and informed third party test	<i>These terms are described in paragraph R120.5 A4.</i>
Related entity	<p>An entity that has any of the following relationships with the client:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) An entity that has direct or indirect control over the client if the client is material to such entity;(b) An entity with a direct financial interest in the client if that entity has significant influence over the client and the interest in the client is material to such entity;(c) An entity over which the client has direct or indirect control;(d) An entity in which the client, or an entity related to the client under (c) above, has a direct financial interest that gives it significant influence over such entity and the interest is material to the client and its related entity in (c); and(e) An entity which is under common control with the client (a "sister entity") if the sister entity and the client are both material to the entity that controls both the client and sister entity.
Relative	<p>Relative as defined in sub-section (77) of section 2 of Companies Act, 2013 read with rule 4 of the Companies (Specification of definitions details) Rules, 2014 is reproduced below:</p> <p><i>"Relative", with reference to any person, means anyone</i></p>

CODE OF ETHICS

who is related to another, if—

- (i) they are members of a Hindu Undivided Family;
- (ii) they are husband and wife; or
- (iii) one person is related to the other in such manner as may be prescribed

List of relatives in terms of clause (77) of section 2.- A person shall be deemed to be the relative of another, if he or she is related to another in the following manner, namely:-

(1) Father:

Provided that the term –Father includes step-father.

(2) Mother:

Provided that the term –Mother includes the step-mother.

(3) Son:

Provided that the term –Son includes the step-son.

(4) Son's wife.

(5) Daughter.

(6) Daughter's husband.

(7) Brother:

Provided that the term –Brother includes the step-brother;

(8) Sister:

Provided that the term –Sister includes the step-sister.

Review client	An entity in respect of which a firm conducts a review engagement.
Review engagement	An assurance engagement, conducted in accordance with <i>Standards on Review Engagements</i> or equivalent, in which a professional accountant in public practice expresses a conclusion on whether, on the basis of the procedures which do not provide all the evidence that

CODE OF ETHICS

would be required in an audit, anything has come to the accountant's attention that causes the accountant to believe that the financial statements are not prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework.

- Review team
- (a) All members of the engagement team for the review engagement; and
 - (b) All others within a firm who can directly influence the outcome of the review engagement, including:
 - (i) Those who recommend the compensation of, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight of the engagement partner in connection with the performance of the review engagement, including those at all successively senior levels above the engagement partner through to the individual who is the firm's Senior or Managing Partner (Chief Executive or equivalent);
 - (ii) Those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry specific issues, transactions or events for the engagement; and
 - (iii) Those who provide quality control for the engagement, including those who perform the engagement quality control review for the engagement; and
 - (c) All those within a network firm who can directly influence the outcome of the review engagement.
- Safeguards
- Safeguards are actions, individually or in combination, that the professional accountant takes that effectively reduce threats to compliance with the fundamental principles to an acceptable level.*
- This term is described in paragraph 120.10 A2.*
- Senior
- Senior professional accountants in service are directors,*

CODE OF ETHICS

professional accountant in service	<p><i>officers or senior employees able to exert significant influence over, and make decisions regarding, the acquisition, deployment and control of the employing organization's human, financial, technological, physical and intangible resources.</i></p> <p><i>This term is described in paragraph 260.11 A1.</i></p>										
Substantial harm	<p><i>This term is described in paragraphs 260.5 A3 and 360.5 A3.</i></p>										
Special purpose financial statements	<p>Financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework designed to meet the financial information needs of specified users.</p>										
Those charged with governance	<p>The person(s) or organization(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. For some entities, those charged with governance might include management personnel, for example, executive members of a governance board of a private or public sector entity, or an owner- manager.</p>										
Threats	<p><i>This term is described in paragraph 120.6 A3 and includes the following categories:</i></p> <table><tr><td><i>Self interest</i></td><td><i>120.6 A3(a)</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>Self-review</i></td><td><i>120.6 A3(b)</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>Advocacy</i></td><td><i>120.6 A3(c)</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>Familiarity</i></td><td><i>120.6 A3(d)</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>Intimidation</i></td><td><i>120.6 A3(e)</i></td></tr></table>	<i>Self interest</i>	<i>120.6 A3(a)</i>	<i>Self-review</i>	<i>120.6 A3(b)</i>	<i>Advocacy</i>	<i>120.6 A3(c)</i>	<i>Familiarity</i>	<i>120.6 A3(d)</i>	<i>Intimidation</i>	<i>120.6 A3(e)</i>
<i>Self interest</i>	<i>120.6 A3(a)</i>										
<i>Self-review</i>	<i>120.6 A3(b)</i>										
<i>Advocacy</i>	<i>120.6 A3(c)</i>										
<i>Familiarity</i>	<i>120.6 A3(d)</i>										
<i>Intimidation</i>	<i>120.6 A3(e)</i>										
Time-on period	<p><i>This term is described in paragraph R540.5.</i></p>										

CODE OF ETHICS

LISTS OF ABBREVIATIONS AND STANDARDS REFERRED TO IN THE CODE

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviation	Explanation
Assurance Framework	Framework for Assurance Engagements
AASB	Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
IFAC	International Federation of Accountants
SAs	Standards on Auditing issued by AASB
SAEs	Standards on Assurance Engagements issued by AASB
SQCs	Standards on Quality Control issued by AASB
SREs	Standards on Review Engagements issued by AASB

LIST OF STANDARDS REFERRED TO IN THE CODE

Standard	Full Title
SA 320	Materiality In Planning and Performing an Audit
SA 610 (Revised)	Using the Work of Internal Auditors
SQC 1	Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Statements, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements
SRE 2400 (Revised)	Engagements to Review Historical Financial Statements

CODE OF ETHICS

EFFECTIVE DATE

The restructured Code will be effective as of April 1, 2020.